

AL-BAHER

Connect 5

Parents' Guide

Second Term



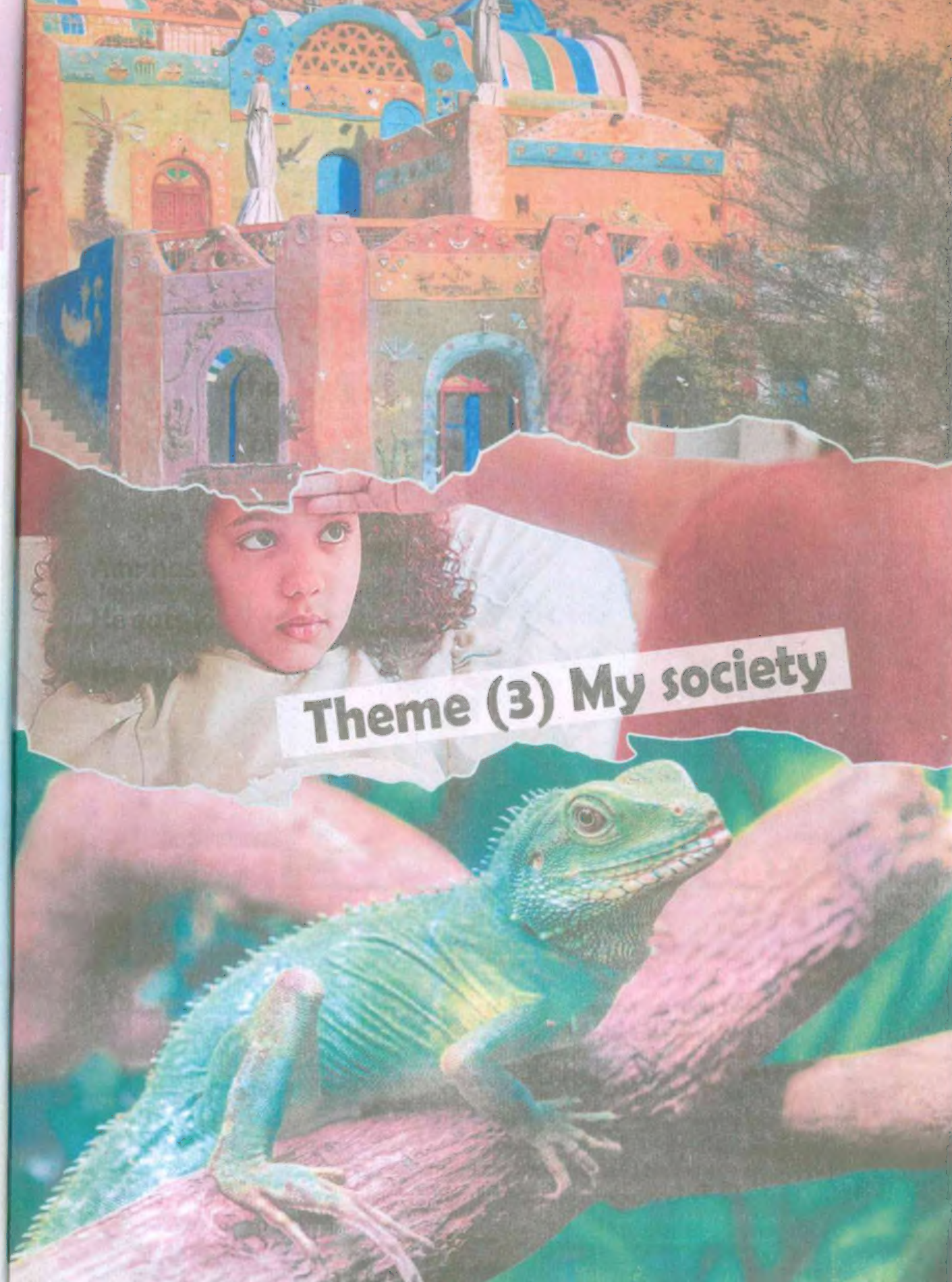
Name :
Class :
School:

Primary

5

Contents

Theme (3)	My society	
Unit (7)	Homes in Egypt	(7)
Unit (8)	At the doctor's	(46)
Unit (9)	My favorite animal	(90)
	Review (3)	(127)
Non-fiction Reader:		
	Are There Endangered Animals in Egypt?	(130)
Theme (4)	Being responsible	
Unit (10)	Let's visit Egypt	(132)
Unit (11)	Getting out in the fresh air	(170)
Unit (12)	Vacations	(206)
	Review (4)	(249)
Fiction reader:		
	A fantastic Family Adventure	(252)
	Listening Texts	(266)



Unit 7 Homes in Egypt

المنازل في مصر

In this unit the student will ...

- listen, read, research, and write about Egyptian homes now and in Ancient Egypt.
- listen, read, research, and write about Egyptian homes now and in Ancient Egypt.
- talk about the home and furniture.
- read, understand, and listen to a short dialog about different homes.
- understand and use the simple past to talk about past events.
- learn how to say double vowels.
- write a simple blog about an unusual home.
- research and make a presentation about an Ancient Egyptian home.

Lesson (1)

THE HOME

Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.



closet

خزانة ملابس



cushion

وسادة



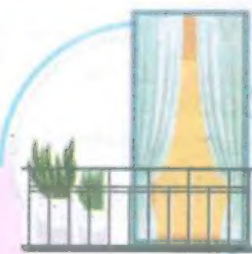
oven

فرن



elevator

مصعد (أسانسير)



balcony

شرفة (بلكونة)



Things at home

أشياء في المنزل



shower

دش



armchair

كرسي ذو ذراعين



television

تلفاز

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

house	منزل	apartment	شقة	living room	حجرة معيشة
bedroom	حجرة نوم	bathroom	حمام	kitchen	مطبخ
parents	الوالدين	space	فضاء - فراغ	closer	أقرب
traditional	تقليدي	modern	حديث - عصري	old	قديم
big	كبير الحجم	small	صغير الحجم	fantastic	رائع



Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
live	يعيش	live	لived
cook	يطهو	move	ينتقل
prefer	يفضل	share	يشارك
		like	يحب
			liked

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
come	يأتي	come	came
		see	يرى
			saw



Important expressions and prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

welcome to....	مرحبًا بكم في....	come in....	تفضل بالدخول
part of	جزء من	move to....	ينتقل إلى....
cook in	يطهو في	a gift from....	هدية من....
What about....?	ماذا عن....؟	What a great view!	يا له من منظر رائع!
share....with....	يشارك.... مع....	live in	يعيش في....

استمع واقرأ.

Listen and read.

- Fareeda** : Hi Dina, welcome to my new apartment! Come in!
أهلاً دينا، مرحباً بك في شقتي الجديدة! تفضلي بالدخول!
- Dina** : Thanks! Do you like living here?
شكراً! هل تحبين العيش هنا؟
- Fareeda** : I love it! It's a great apartment! I like this part of town and it's much bigger than our old apartment.
أنا أحبها! إنها شقة رائعة! أحب هذا الجزء من المدينة وهي أكبر بكثير من شقتنا القديمة.
- Dina** : How long did you live in your old apartment?
كم المدة التي عشتيها في شقتك القديمة؟
- Fareeda** : Twelve years, since I was born. Then my parents had to move to a new job, so we moved to a closer apartment.
اثنتا عشرة سنة، منذ مولدي. ثم اضطر والدي إلى الانتقال إلى وظيفة جديدة، لذلك انتقلنا إلى شقة أقرب.
- Dina** : So, what's better about this new apartment?
إذن، ما هو الأفضل في هذه الشقة الجديدة؟
- Fareeda** : Come and see. The new kitchen is bigger, and the oven is more modern. My mom says it's much easier to cook in.
تعالى وشاهدي. المطبخ الجديد أكبر والفرن أكثر حداثة. تقول أمي إنه أسهل بكثير أن تطبخي فيه.
- Dina** : Very nice. And this is the living room?
جميل جداً. وهذه هي غرفة المعيشة؟
- Fareeda** : Yes, as you can see, there's more space so we can have a bigger television. Look at these traditional cushions. They were a gift from Grandma.
نعم! كما ترين، هناك مساحة أكبر حتى نتمكن من امتلاك تلفاز أكبر. انظري إلى هذه الوسائد التقليدية. كانوا هدية من الجدة.
- Dina** : Oh, yes! What about the bedrooms?
أوه، نعم! وماذا عن غرف النوم؟
- Fareeda** : We have three bedrooms now. I share a room with my sister, Amira, but our bedroom is really big. And we have two bathrooms.
لدينا ثلاث غرف نوم الآن. أنا أشارك أميرة مع أختي أميرة لكن غرفة نومنا كبيرة جداً. ولدينا حمامين.
- Dina** : It's lovely! The balcony is fantastic too - what a great view!
إنها جميلة! الشرفة رائعة أيضاً - يا له من منظر رائع!



Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

- 1 My parents had to move to a new job.
- 2 We moved to a farther apartment.
- 3 The new kitchen is bigger.
- 4 We have two bedrooms now.

☐
☐
☐
☐

2 Listen and complete. استمع وأكمل.

- 1 Fareeda lives in a new
- 2 The new apartment is
- 3 The new apartment is bigger than the one.
- 4 Fareeda's parents moved to a new

3 Read and match. اقرأ واصل.

- | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 Welcome to | a a room with my brother. |
| 2 How long did you live | b I live in an apartment. |
| 3 I share | c my new apartment. |
| 4 Where do you live? | d in your old apartment? |

1-() 2-() 3-() 4-()

4 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 I live in a/an
a) lake b) apartment c) balcony d) sea

- 2 We sleep in the
a) bathroom b) living room c) bedroom d) kitchen
- 3 There is a/an in the bathroom.
a) shower b) armchair c) bed d) oven
- 4 Welcome my new apartment!
a) in b) to c) with d) for
- 5 There is a/an in the kitchen.
a) oven b) armchair c) bed d) shower

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences. أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة.

1 in - I - an apartment - live - .

2 is - Why - happy - Fareeda - ?

3 about - bedrooms - What - the - ?

4 fantastic - balcony - The - is - .

6 Write a paragraph of about (40) words. اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

My new apartment

Guiding words:

(new apartment - bigger - balcony - fantastic)

7 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

what a great view

MY PERFECT ROOM

Key Vocabulary

كلمات رئيسية

on the right	على اليمين	on the left	على اليسار
on the wall	على الحائط	in the middle of....	في منتصف
next to	بجوار		

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

poster	ملصق	perfect	مثالي	chair	كرسي
video games	ألعاب فيديو	alone	بمفرده	street	شارع

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Present	Past	Present	Past
miss	يفتقد - يفوته	die	يموت
smile	يبتسم	sat	يجلس
try	يحاول	ate	ياكل

Important expressions and prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

perfect bedroom	حجرة نوم مثالية	sit in a chair	يجلس على كرسي
make friends	يكون صداقات	go down the street	ينزل الشارع

Read about the bedroom.



I love my bedroom. I share it with my sister. **On the right**, there is my bed with a desk **next to** it. **On the left**, there is my sister's bed. **In the middle of** the room, there is an armchair with two cushions and a big closet. **On the wall**, there are lots of posters of animals.

أنا أحب غرفة نومي. أشاركها مع أختي. على اليمين يوجد سريري وبجانبه مكتب. على اليسار يوجد سرير أختي. في منتصف الغرفة يوجد كرسي بذراعين مع وسادتين وخزانة كبيرة. وعلى الحائط، هناك الكثير من ملصقات الحيوانات.

* Draw your perfect bedroom.

Prefix

Prefix: is a group of letters that we add before the stem of a word which cause a change in its meaning

البادئة: هي مجموعة حروف نضيفها قبل أصل الكلمة والتي تسبب تغيير في معناها

Un-

means 'not'. البادئة (un-) تفيد عكس الكلمة

friendly	ودود	→	unfriendly	غير ودود
comfortable	مريح	→	uncomfortable	غير مريح
lucky	محظوظ	→	unlucky	غير محظوظ
safe	آمن	→	unsafe	غير آمن
happy	سعيد	→	unhappy	غير سعيد
fair	عادل	→	unfair	غير عادل - ظالم



Study the following

Word	الكلمة	Meaning	معناها
unfriendly		not kind to someone	
unsafe		dangerous	
unhappy		sad	
uncomfortable		something that doesn't feel nice to sit on or wear on your body	
unlucky		something bad happens to you without a reason	
unfair		something that happens that isn't morally right or fair	

1 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- _____ the right of my bedroom, there is my bed.
a) In b) At c) On d) To
- In the _____ of the room, there is an armchair.
a) right b) left c) straight d) middle
- _____ the wall, there are lots of posters of animals.
a) On b) So c) For d) To
- His cat died last week. He was very _____.
a) unhappy b) lucky c) unsafe d) unfair
- I never sit in that green armchair. It's very _____.
a) uncomfortable b) unlucky c) unfair d) safe
- Don't go down the street in the dark alone. It's very _____.
a) unsafe b) fair c) unfair d) unkind
- The bed is not very _____. I can't sleep on it.
a) comfortable b) happy c) unhappy d) fair
- She is _____. She is sad.
a) happy b) delighted c) pleased d) unhappy

2 Read and match.

اقرأ ووصل.

- | | |
|--------------|---|
| 1 unfriendly | a something bad happens to you without a reason |
| 2 unhappy | b dangerous |
| 3 unlucky | c sad |
| 4 unsafe | d not kind to someone |
| 5 unfair | e something that happens that isn't morally right or fair |

1-() 2-() 3-() 4-() 5-()

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

My uncle is a scientist and loves animals. When he **was** younger, he **traveled** a lot in South America for work. He loved it there because the people **were** very friendly and **helped** him with his work. Then, about three years ago, something frightening **happened** to him and he was lucky he lived to tell me about it!



Howler monkeys in the jungle

عمي عالم ويحب الحيوانات. عندما كان أصغر سنًا، سافر كثيرًا في أمريكا الجنوبية للعمل. لقد أحب المكان هناك لأن الناس كانوا ودودين للغاية وساعدوه في عمله. ثم منذ حوالي ثلاث سنوات، حدث له شيء مخيف وكان محظوظًا أن يعيش ليخبرني بذلك.

He was very interested in howler monkeys and **wanted** to do some research into their family groups. A local villager **told** him where there was a howler monkey family nearby and he was very happy. But the villager also **said**, "Tomorrow, we are going to have a lot of rain so it **could** be unsafe."

كان مهتمًا جدًا بالقرود العواء وأراد أن يجري بعض الأبحاث في مجموعات عائلاتهم. وأخبره أحد القرويين بمكان وجود عائلة قرود العواء في مكان قريب وكان سعيدًا جدًا. لكن القروي قال أيضًا، "غداً ستهطل أمطار غزيرة لذا قد يكون الوضع غير آمن".

My uncle **set out** to look for the howler monkey family and soon he was deep in the jungle. He **could hear** the monkeys and he **looked up**. He **knew** he was very close to them. Then the rain started. It was very heavy rain.

انطلق عمي للبحث عن عائلة قرود العواء وسرعان ما كان في أعماق الغابة واستطاع أن يسمع القروود ونظر لأعلى. وكان يعلم أنه كان قريبًا جدًا منهم. ثم بدأ المطر. كانت أمطارًا غزيرة جدًا.

Soon, there was water everywhere and he couldn't see the path to go forward or back. Suddenly, lots of water **came** toward him and **carried** him away down to the river. He was very frightened.

وسرعان ما كان هناك ماء في كل مكان ولم يستطع رؤية الطريق للسير قدمًا أو للخلف. وفجأة، جاء الكثير من الماء نحوه وحمله بعيدًا إلى النهر. كان خائفًا جدًا.

Suddenly, he **saw** a hand and someone was shouting. It was the villager.

He **took** Uncle's hand and said, "Now you are safe!" My uncle was very happy indeed!

وفجأة رأى يدًا وكان شخصًا يصرخ. لقد كان القروي. أخذ بيد العم وقال، "الآن أنت بأمان!" كان عمي بالفعل سعيدًا للغاية!

The Past Simple Tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

Usage:

الاستخدام:

1- To talk about something that happened once.

1- للتعبير عن شيء حدث ذات مرة فيما مضى.

e.g. I **visited** her house when I **was** five.

2- To talk about something that happened several times in the past.

2- للتعبير عن شيء حدث عدة مرات في الماضي.

e.g. We **went** to my aunt's house at the beach every summer.

3- To talk about something that was true for some time in the past.

3- للتعبير عن شيء ما كان حقيقيًا لوقت ما في الماضي.

e.g. He **loved** living in his grandmother's apartment **as a child**.

4- Expressions with ago.

4- التعبيرات مع ago.

e.g. I **met** her in Zagazig **two years ago**.

Form:

التكوين:

The second form of the verb.

التصريف الثاني للفعل.

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

use → used

play → played

try → tried

- We add **(d)** when the verb ends in **(e)**.

نضيف **(d)** عندما ينتهي الفعل بـ **(e)**.

live → lived

die → died

create → created

Help your child use the past simple tense.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط.

- We add **(ed)** to the other regular verbs. **نضيف (ed) لنهاية الأفعال المنتظمة الأخرى.**
 travel → travel**ed** { want → want**ed** { help → help**ed**

- We change **(-y)** to **(-i)** and add **(-ed)** when the verb ends in a consonant + **(y)**

نحول الـ **(y)** إلى **(i)** ثم نضيف **(ed)** للفعل المنتهي بـ **(y)** يسبقه حرف ساكن.

try → try**ed** { carry → carry**ed** { study → study**ed**

Irregular verbs الأفعال الغير منتظمة

come → came { eat → ate { see → saw

Study these verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
visit يزور	visited	happen يحدث	happened
love يحب	loved	help يساعد	helped
carry يحمل	carried	travel يسافر	traveled
look up ينظر لأعلى	looked up	start يبدأ	started
create يبتكر	created	rain تمطر	rained

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
go يذهب	went	meet يقابل	met
am / is يكون	was	tell يخبر	told
are يكونوا	were	say يقول	said
take يأخذ	took	set out يبدأ رحلة	set out

النفى:

Subject (الفاعل) + didn't + inf. (المصدر)

e.g. The people **didn't help** him with his work.

Question

السؤال:

(Yes / No) question:

السؤال بـ (هل):

Did + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (المصدر)?

e.g. Did you **visit** Ali yesterday? - Yes, I did. - No, I didn't.

Wh- question

السؤال بكلمة استفهام:

Q.W. + did + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (المصدر)?

e.g. When did you **meet** Heba?

- I **met** her two days ago.

Keywords

الكلمات الدالة:

yesterday أمس	last الماضي
ago فيما مضى - منذ	in the past في الماضي
in 2020 في عام ٢٠٢٠	

1 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- I her house when I was five.
 a) visit b) visited c) visits d) visiting
- She her friend two days ago.
 a) met b) meet c) meets d) meeting
- He to South America last week.
 a) travel b) travelling c) traveled d) travels

Help your child identify the past simple tense.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على زمن الماضي البسيط.

- 4 The local people didn't him with his work.
a) help b) helps c) helped d) helping
- 5 He didn't Om Ali in Tanta.
a) eat b) ate c) eats d) eating
- 6 He came here two days
a) every b) yesterday c) now d) ago
- 7 I visited her when I five.
a) is b) am c) were d) was
- 8 Yesterday, my cousin to visit us.
a) come b) came c) comes d) coming
- 9 His grandma went to Aswan
a) now b) tomorrow c) today d) last year
- 10 It rain yesterday.
a) doesn't b) didn't c) don't d) isn't
- 11 She a fantastic sculpture last summer.
a) create b) created c) creates d) creating

2 Make the sentences negative.

حول هذه الجمل إلى صيغة النفي.

1 He traveled all over Egypt.

2 He ate Om Ali in Tanta.

3 It rained yesterday.

4 They came here by airplane.



Activities

1 Listen and complete.

استمع وأكمل.

- 1 I love my
- 2, there is my bed.
- 3 In the of the room, there is an armchair.
- 4, there are lots of posters of animals.

2 Read and match.

اقرأ وامل.

- | | |
|-------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 unsafe | a uncomfortable. |
| 2 He looks | b not kind to someone |
| 3 unfriendly | c dangerous |
| 4 The armchair is | d unhappy. |

1-() 2-() 3-() 4-()

3 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 That's very..... You ate everything and didn't leave any for us.
a) dangerous b) sad c) fair d) unfair
- 2 He's very because he missed the bus.
a) unlucky b) unfriendly c) unfair d) fair
- 3 She's very..... She never smiles or tries to make friends.
a) unfriendly b) happy c) unfair d) unlucky
- 4, my cousin came to visit us.
a) Now b) Yesterday c) Tomorrow d) Ago

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

1 We didn't any new friends.
a) met b) meets c) meet d) meeting

2 I Om Ali in Tanta yesterday.
a) eats b) ate c) eating d) eaten

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1 unhappy - He - very - was - .
عد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

2 didn't - It - yesterday - rain - .

3 is - uncomfortable - The armchair - very - .

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

My uncle is a scientist and loves animals. When he was younger, he traveled a lot in South America for work. He loved it there because the people were very friendly and helped him with his work. He was very interested in howler monkeys and wanted to do some research into their family groups.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1 People in South America are
a) dangerous b) sad c) friendly d) safe

2 My uncle loves
a) books b) animals c) plants d) sports

B) Answer the following questions.

1 What does your uncle do?

2 Where did your uncle travel when he was younger?

Lesson (5)

ANCIENT EGYPTIAN HOMES

Listen, point and say

استمع، أشر وقل.



Extra Vocabulary

Ancient Egypt

cool

furniture

the countryside

العصر الفرعوني

بارد

الأثاث

الريف

drinking

cooking

washing

papyrus

الشرب

الطبخ

الغسل

القصب

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs افعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
use يستخدم	used	want يريد	wanted
paint يدهن - يلوّن	painted	relax يسترخي	relaxed
save يوفر - يحفظ	saved	cover يغطي	covered

Irregular verbs افعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
make يمنع	made	keep يحفظ - يربي	kept
sleep ينام	slept	build يبني	built
grow يزرع	grew	have - has يملك	had

Important expressions and prepositions

used for	يستخدم لـ	flat roofs	اسطح مستوية
different from	مختلف عن	the same as ..	نفس الشيء، مثل
wooden boxes	صناديق خشبية	join together	تتصل ببعضها
by the banks of the Nile	بالقرب من ضفاف النيل	at night	ليلاً

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

In Ancient Egypt, many people made their homes near the Nile. They used its water for drinking, cooking, and washing. They also used mud from the river to make bricks for their houses. The mud bricks made very strong walls.

في مصر القديمة، بنى الكثير من الناس منازلهم بالقرب من النيل. واستخدموا مياهه للشرب والطبخ والغسيل. كما استخدموا طين النهر لصنع الطوب لمنازلهم. الطوب اللبن صنع جدراناً قوية جداً.

Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep their homes cool. The mud bricks helped do this. Some people also painted their homes white to make them cooler. Ancient Egyptian homes all had flat roofs, which were the coolest part of the house. Families often cooked, ate, relaxed, and slept there on hot nights.

أراد المصريون القدماء الحفاظ على برودة منازلهم، وساعد الطوب اللبن في القيام بذلك. قام بعض الناس أيضاً بطلاء منازلهم باللون الأبيض لجعلها أكثر برودة. كانت جميع المنازل المصرية القديمة ذات أسطح مستوية، والتي كانت أبرد جزء في المنزل. وكانت العائلات غالباً ما تقوم بالطهي والأكل والاسترخاء والنوم هناك في الليالي الحارة.

The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from today. There were reed mats to sit and sleep on. They used papyrus to cover the windows and doors. This kept the insects outside. In every home, there were large pots and baskets for storing crops and wooden boxes for clothes. Not many people had beds or chairs.

كان الأثاث في المنازل المصرية القديمة مختلف تماماً عن اليوم. كانت هناك حصائر من البوص للجلوس واللوم عليها. واستخدموا ورق البردي لتغطية النوافذ والأبواب. وكان هذا يبقي الحشرات في الخارج. وفي كل منزل، كان هناك أواني وسلال كبيرة لتخزين المحاصيل وصناديق خشبية للملابس. لم يكن لدى الكثير من الناس أسرة أو كراسي.

In cities, people lived very close together, and so they built their houses taller, with two floors. This saved space so they could build more houses. City houses joined together, just like today. In the countryside, houses usually only had one floor, and they also had a garden. They grew vegetables and kept chickens there.

في المدن، كان الناس يعيشون بالقرب جداً من بعضهم البعض ولذلك بنوا منازلهم أطول، من طابقين وهذا وفر مساحة حتى يتمكنوا من بناء المزيد من المنازل. كانت منازل المدينة متصلة ببعضها، تماماً كما هو الحال اليوم. في الريف كانت المنازل عادة مكونة من طابق واحد وكانت تحتمي على حديقة، وكانوا يزرعون الخضار، ويربون الدجاج فيها.

Listen and read the poem

استمع واقرأ القصيدة.

By the banks of the ancient River Nile, بجوار ضفاف نهر النيل القديم،
 Egyptian houses had a special style كانت منازل المصريين لها طراز خاص
 Dark inside with small windows، مظلمة من الداخل وبها نوافذ صغيرة،
 Reed mats on the roof where the cool wind blows، سعائر من السعف على السطح حيث يهب الريح الباردة،
 Outside under the stars at night، في الخارج تحت النجوم بالليل،
 One family together, feeling all right، أسرة واحدة معاً، تشعر بأنها بخير،
 Mud from the Nile made their walls الطين من النيل جعل جدرانهم
 Safe and strong, and never to fall، آمنة وقوية، ولا تستطع أبداً.

Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

- 1 In cities, people lived very close together. ☐
 - 2 They built their houses shorter with two floors. ☐
 - 3 City houses joined together. ☐
 - 4 In the countryside, they grew vegetables. ☐
- 2 Listen and complete. استمع وأكمل.
- 1 In ancient Egypt, many people made their homes near _____.
 - 2 They used _____ for drinking, cooking and washing.
 - 3 They used _____ from the river to make bricks.
 - 4 The mud _____ made very strong walls.

3 Read and match

اقرأ ووصل.

- 1 In ancient Egypt, people made **a** sit and sleep on.
- 2 The mud bricks made **a** their clothes in wooden boxes.
- 3 There were reed mats to **a** their homes near the Nile.
- 4 The Ancient Egyptians stored **d** unhappy.
- e** very strong walls.

1- () 2- () 3- () 4- ()

4 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 The mud bricks helped Ancient Egyptians to keep their homes _____.
a) sunny b) cool c) warm d) hot
- 2 The Ancient Egyptians stored their clothes in _____ boxes.
a) wooden b) sand c) glass d) plastic
- 3 A lot of Ancient Egyptians made their homes near the _____.
a) lake b) Nile c) desert d) Red Sea
- 4 The Ancient Egyptians used mud _____ to make their houses.
a) bricks b) reeds c) papyrus d) stones
- 5 The furniture in Ancient Egyptians homes was very different _____ today.
a) from b) for c) on d) as

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

- 1 their - What - use to - people - did build - homes - ?

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

Help your child listen, read and discuss.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع، يقرأ ويناقش.

2 there - They - chickens - kept - vegetables - grew - and - .

3 had - Egyptian houses - style - a special - .

6 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep their homes cool. The mud bricks helped do this. Some people also painted their homes white to make them cooler. Ancient Egyptian homes all had flat roofs, which were the coolest part of the house. Families often cooked, ate, relaxed, and slept there on hot nights.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1 Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep their homes

a) sunny b) warm c) hot d) cool

2 Some people also painted their homes

a) yellow b) black c) brown d) white

B) Answer the following questions.

3 What did Ancient Egyptian homes all have?

4 What did the Ancient Egyptians use to make their homes cool?

7 Write a paragraph of about (40) words. اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

Ancient Egyptian Homes

Guiding words:

(made - Nile - mud bricks - cool - flat roofs - clothes - wooden boxes - reed mats - sit)

Lesson (4 / A)

PRONUNCIATION

Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

long (e)

(ee) /i:/



tree
شجرة



sheep
خروف



seed
بذرة



queen
ملكة

long (o)

oo) /u:/



school
مدرسة



smooth
ناعم



food
طعام



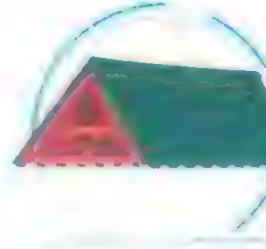
zoo
حديقة حيوان



noon
ظهيرة



spoon
ملعقة



roof
سطح



pool
حمام سباحة

Help your child learn how to pronounce double vowels.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم نطق حروفين متحركين متتاليين

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

(oo) /u:/

short (o)



book
كتاب



cook
يطهو



wood
خشب



wool
صوف



good
جيد

(oo) /u:/



flood
فيضان



blood
دم

Put the words in the correct column in the table.

ضع الكلمات في العمود المناسب للجدول.

(school - book - flood - tree - three - wood - cook - food - zoo - spoon - pool - sheep - queen)

/u:/

/u:/

/u:/

/i:/

Lesson
(4 / B)

MATH

Decimals الكسور العشرية

13.95

1	3		9	5
tens	units	decimal point	tenths	hundredths
عشرات	آحاد	العلامة العشرية	جزء من عشرة	جزء من مائة
digits after the decimal point.				



How do we round decimal numbers?

كيف يمكننا تقريب الأرقام العشرية؟

Circle the digit after the decimal point then notice.

حيط الرقم الموجود بعد العلامة العشرية ثم لاحظ:

1- If the digit in the tenths is 5 or more, then we'll round up to the nearest whole number.

إذا كان الرقم الموجود في خانة الجزء من العشرة (الخمس أو أكبر من خمسة)، إذن سوف نقرب لأعلى لأقرب عدد صحيح.

14.95 becomes (15)

12.62 becomes (13)

2- If the digit in the tenths is less than 5, then we round down to the nearest whole number.

إذا كان الرقم الموجود في خانة الجزء من العشرة (أقل من خمسة)، إذن سوف نقرب لأسفل لأقرب عدد صحيح.

14.44 becomes (14)

12.24 becomes (12)



Activities

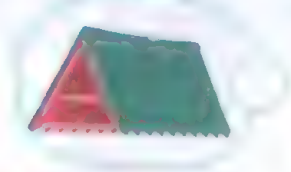
1 Read the sounds and match.

/u:/

/ʊ/

/ʌ/

/i:/



اقرأ الأصوات وامل.

2 Listen and complete the word.



s _ _ d

p _ _ l

w _ _ d

bl _ _ d

استمع وأكمل الكلمة.

3 Circle the digits after the decimal point then round the numbers.

دوّط الأرقام بعد العلامة العشرية ثم قرب هذه الأرقام.

283.7 =

7.2 =

8.37 =

3.126 =

4 Round up/down to the nearest whole number.

قرب لأقرب عدد صحيح.

1.7 =

221.22 =

3.2 =

45.67 =

1.3 =

3.7 =

3.56 =

189.37 =

Lessons (5&6)

- WRITING - PROJECT

Key Vocabulary

blogging	التدوين	ecological	بيئي	fit	باللياقة البدنية
architect	مهندس معماري	pot	إناء	gate	بوابة
the Netherlands	هولندا	landscape	منظر طبيعي	heat	حرارة
fields	حقول	farmhouse	مزرعة	light	ضوء
different	مختلفة	unusual	غير عادي	top	قمة
topic	موضوع	The Upside down house	البيت المقلوب		

Adjectives

الصفات

Positive

إيجابية

Negative

سلبية

funny	مضحك - مثير للضحك	awful	مريع
awesome	مذهل - رائع	annoying	مزعج
brilliant	رائع - ماسق	boring	ملل
cool	بارد - رائع		
friendly	صديق		
interesting	مثير للاهتمام		

Note:

Blogging to write about something in an online blog.

التدوين: أن تكتب عن شيء ما في مدونة عبر الإنترنت.

Ecological related to living things and their environments.

بيئي: مرتبط بالكائنات الحية وبيئاتها.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Dalida

HOME ABOUT ME LIVES ARCHIVE

Wednesday, 8th November

Unusual homes

Hi! My name's Dalida and I like **blogging** about different things. This week I'm writing about unusual homes. This topic is very interesting for me because my mom's an architect, so she sometimes takes me to see some brilliant places. It's really awesome!



أهلاً اسمي داليدا وأنا أحب التدوين عن أشياء مختلفة. أكتب هذا الأسبوع عن منازل غير عادية. هذا الموضوع شيق جداً بالنسبة لي لأن أمي مهندسة معمارية، لذا فهي تأخذني أحياناً لرؤية بعض الأماكن الرائعة. إنه أمر رائع حقاً. I found this unusual house in the Netherlands online - it's upside down! It is actually an old **farmhouse** which people are changing to make it modern. This works very well because all the windows are at the top, so you get a lot of light. Local people like it because it fits in very well with the local **landscape**, which is farms and fields. It is also very **ecological** because they use air, water, and sun to heat and make energy for the house. That's so cool!

لقد وجدت هذا المنزل الغريب في هولندا عبر الإنترنت. إنه مقلوب! إنه في الواقع منزل ريفي قديم ويغيره الناس لجعله حديثاً وهذا يسير بشكل جيد لأن كل النوافذ في الأعلى. وبالتالي تحصل على الكثير من الضوء. يحبه السكان المحليون لأنه يتناسب مع المناظر الطبيعية المحلية وهي المزارع والحقول. وهو أيضاً صديق للبيئة لأنهم يستخدمون الهواء والماء والشمس للتدفئة وتوليد الطاقة للمنزل. هذا رائع جداً!

What do you think of it? Do you like it?

ما رأيك فيه؟ هل يعجبك؟



Upside down house in the Netherlands

Tip!

Steps for writing a blog

خطوات كتابة مدونة

- 1- Write about something you like and enjoy. اكتب عن شيء تحبه وتستمتع به.
- 2- Write to your readers as if you are speaking to them. Use Contractions (I'm, It's) and words like "awesome" and "cool". اكتب لقرائك وكأنك تتحدث إليهم. واستخدم الاختصارات (I'm - It's) وكلمات مثل مدهش وجميل.
- 3- Use exclamation marks (!) and emojis 😄 😊 😍 😘. استخدم علامات التعجب ووجوه المشاعر.
- 4- Give your opinion and invite your readers to give theirs. عبر عن رأيك واطلب من القراء التعبير عن آرائهم.
- 5- Check that your spelling is correct. تأكد أن الهجاء صحيح.



Activities

اقرأ واملأ.

1 Read and match.

- | | |
|-------------------------|--|
| 1 I like | a spelling is correct. |
| 2 Ecological is related | b blogging about different things. |
| 3 My mom is an | c architect. |
| 4 Check that your | d to living things and their environments. |

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

1 writing - about - I'm - homes - unusual - .2 you - Do - it - like - ?3 's home Where - the - ?

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

I found this unusual house in the Netherlands online. It's upside down! It is actually an old farmhouse which people are changing to make it modern. This works very well because all the windows are at the top, so you get a lot of light. Local people like it because it fits in very well with the local landscape, which is farms and fields. It is also very ecological because they use air, water and sun to heat and make energy for the house.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1 The house is in the
a) Netherlands b) Egypt c) France d) China
- 2 The house is upside
a) up b) on c) at d) down

B) Answer the following questions.

3 Why is that house very ecological?

4 Where are the windows?

4 Write a paragraph of about (40) words. اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

The upside down house

Guiding words:

(unusual - in the Netherlands - upside down - windows - top)

Review on Unit (7)

Vocabulary

elevator	مصعد (أسانسير)	closet	خزانة ملابس
cushion	وسادة	oven	فرن
balcony	شرفة (بلكونة)	armchair	كرسي ذو ذراعين
television	تلفاز	shower	دش
sleeping area	منطقة النوم	roof	سطح
reed mat	حصيرة	gate	بوابة
pot	إناء	blogging	التدوين
ecological	بيئي	Upside down house	المنزل المقلوب

Adjectives

unfriendly	غير وودود	uncomfortable	غير مريح	unlucky	غير محظوظ
unsafe	غير آمن	unhappy	حزين	unfair	غير عادل
annoying	مزعج	awesome	مدهش - مذهل	awful	فظيع
friendly	ودود	funny	مضحك - مضحك	interesting	شيق
boring	ممل	brilliant	لامع - متالق	cool	رائع - معتدل البرودة

Language

On the right, there is my bed.	على اليمين.....
On the left, there's my sister's bed.	على اليسار.....
In the middle of the room, there's a table.	في منتصف الغرفة.....
He looks unhappy.	يبدو أنه غير سعيد.
I met her in Zagazig two years ago.	قابلتها في الزقازيق منذ سنتين.
It didn't rain yesterday.	لم تمطر أمس.

Phonics

Double vowels

long (oo) /u:/		short (oo) /ʊ/		long (ee) /i:/	
school	مدرسة	book	كتاب	sheep	خروف
roof	سطح	cook	يطهو	seed	بذرة
food	طعام	wood	خشب	queen	ملكة
noon	الظهيرة	wool	صوف	tree	شجرة
spoon	ملعقة	good	جيد	cheese	جبن

Math

Decimals

23.95				
2	3	.	9	5
tens	units	decimal point	tenths	hundredths
عشرات	أحاد	العلامة العشرية	جزء من عشرة	جزء من مائة
			digits after the decimal point.	
			أرقام بعد العلامة العشرية.	

Round up/down

إذا كان الرقم الموجود في خانة الجزء من العشرة (الجزء من العشرة) أكبر من خمسة، إذن سوف نقرب لأعلى لأقرب عدد صحيح.

e.g. 15.95 becomes (16)

إذا كان الرقم الموجود في خانة الجزء من العشرة (الجزء من العشرة) أصغر من خمسة، إذن سوف نقرب لأسفل لأقرب عدد صحيح.

e.g. 124.2 becomes (124)

Writing Corner

Write a paragraph of about (40) words. اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

My new apartment

We moved to a new apartment. It is bigger than the old one. The kitchen is big and there is an oven in it. The living room has a balcony. It's really fantastic. There are three bedrooms. I share a bedroom with my sister. I like our new apartment.

Ancient Egyptian homes

In Ancient Egypt, many people made their homes near the Nile. They used mud bricks to make very strong walls. The mud bricks kept their houses cool. The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from today. There were reed mats to sleep or sit on.

Unusual homes

I like blogging about unusual homes. I found an unusual house in the Netherlands online. It's upside down! All the windows are at the top, so you get a lot of light. Local people like it because it fits in very well with the local landscape, which is farms and fields. It is also very ecological because they use air, water, and sun to heat and make energy for the house.

Dictation on Unit (7)

Lesson (1)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	خزانة ملابس		تليفزيون
	وسادة		دش
	فرن		مصعد
	كرسي ذو ذراعين		بلكونه

Lesson (2)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	على اليمين		على اليسار
	على الحائط		في المنتصف
	بحوار		مثالي

Lesson (3)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	ورق البردي		إناء
	منطقة النوم		حصيرة
	طوب لبن		بوابة
	سطح		الريف

Lesson (4)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	شجرة		ناعم
	خروف		دم
	بذور		فيضان
	ملكة		ظهيرة
	سطح		يطهو
	صوف		خشب

Lessons (5 & 6)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	مهندس معماري		مقلوب
	مزرعة		مناظر طبيعية

Activities on Unit (7)

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False

استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ

- 1 My uncle is a teacher.
- 2 He loves animals.
- 3 He traveled a lot in South America for work.
- 4 In South America, people were unfriendly.

2 Listen and complete.

استمع وأكمل.

- 1 I like about different things.
- 2 I'm writing about unusual
- 3 This topic is very
- 4 My mom's an

3 Read and match.

اقرأ واصل.

- | | |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1 Where do you live? | a Zagazig two years ago. |
| 2 In the middle of the room, | b keep homes cool. |
| 3 I met her in | c there is a table. |
| 4 The mud bricks | d I live in Tanta. |
| 5 Ancient Egyptians put | e their clothes in wooden boxes. |
| | f not kind to someone. |

- 1- () 2- () 3- () 4- () 5- ()

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from today. There were reed mats to sit and sleep on. They used papyrus to cover the windows and doors. This kept the insects outside. In every home, there were large pots and baskets for storing crops and wooden boxes for clothes. Not many people had beds or chairs.

In cities, people lived very close together, and so they built their houses taller, with two floors. This saved space so they could build more houses. City houses joined together, just like today. In the countryside, houses usually only had one floor, and they also had a garden. They grew vegetables and kept chickens there.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1 The opposite of the word "taller" is
a) fatter b) bigger c) longer d) shorter
- 2 There were reed mats to and sleep on.
a) sit b) drink c) build d) make

B) Answer the following questions.

- 1 How were the countryside houses?
- 2 How many floors did people build their houses in cities?

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة.

- 1 does - What - home - like - the - look - ?
- 2 do - How - we - numbers - round - decimal - ?
- 3 didn't - dinner - She - eat - .
- 4 went - the - They - to - beach - .

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- 1 we went to sharm El-Sheikh on holiday
- 2 where did Ancient Egyptians build their houses

7 Write a paragraph of about (40) words. اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

Ancient Egyptian Homes

Guiding elements:

- Where is the home? In the city or the country?
- What does the home look like from outside?

Unit 8 At the doctor's

8

In this unit the student will...

- listen, read, research, and write about different illnesses and treatments.
- read a story about an elephant.
- practice using "have" to talk about illnesses.
- listen to and understand a conversation between a doctor and a patient.
- learn about and use the prefixes un, ir, il, and im.
- understand the difference between /f/ and /v/ sounds.
- write a short paragraph about staying healthy.
- plan what to put in a first-aid kit and make a poster.

Lesson (1)

THEY DIDN'T COME TO THE CLUB!



Main Vocabulary

كلمات أساسية



earache
ألم في الأذن



toothache
ألم في الأسنان



backache
ألم في الظهر



headache
صداع



sore throat
التهاب الحلق



a cold
زكام / نزلة برد



cough
كحة / سعال



stomachache
ألم في المعدة



Extra Vocabulary

ankle

كاحل القدم

honey

عسل

coach

مدرب

back

ظهر

dentist

طبيب أسنان

careful

حريص / حذر

shoulder

كتف

problem

مشكلة

leg

ساق

stomach

معدة

people

ناس

ear

أذن



Conjugation of verbs

Irregular verbs

Present	Future	Present	Past
hurt	ألم / يؤلم	hurt	ألم
have / has	يملك / عنده	feel	يشعر
		come	came
		felt	

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Important expressions and prepositions

feel better	أشعر بالتحسن	at football practice	ممارسة كرة القدم
worried about	قلق بشأن	ouch!	أعني! هذا الألم
I hope so	أتمنى ذلك	from swimming	من السباحة

Mum : Hi Fares! Did you have a good day at the club?

مرحبًا يا فارس! هل قضيت يومًا جيدًا في النادي؟

Fares : Not really. Only five people came to the club today!

في الواقع لا. جاء خمسة أشخاص فقط إلى النادي اليوم!

Mum : Oh no! Are they OK?

أوه لا! هل هم بخير؟

Fares : No, they have problems.
My friend Tarek hurt his ankle
at football practice last night.

And Amr has an earache from swimming.

لا، لديهم مشاكل. صديق تاريك أصيب في كاحله في تدريب كرة القدم الليلة الماضية. ويعاني عمرو من ألم في الأذن من السباحة.

Mum : What about your cousin Lama?

Your aunt said she had a toothache.

ماذا عن ابنة عمك لاما؟ قالت عمك إنها تعاني من ألم في الأسنان.

Fares : No, she wasn't there. I think she went to the dentist. Two of my friends have a cold. The coach told us to be careful. When we have a cough or a sore throat, we should stay home!

لا، لم تكن هناك. أعتقد أنها ذهبت إلى طبيب الأسنان. اثنان من أصدقائي مصابان بالبرد. المدرب أخبرنا أن نكون حذرين. عندما يكون لدينا سعال أو التهاب في الحلق، يجب أن نبقى في المنزل!

Mum : How do you feel?

Fares : Well, I have a backache and I'm worried about my friends. I hope they'll feel better tomorrow.

حسنًا، لدي ألم في الظهر وأنا قلق على أصدقائي. أتمنى أن يشعروا بالتحسن غدًا.

Mum : I hope so, too!

أتمنى ذلك أيضًا.

Listen and learn.

استمع واقرأ.

What's the matter, Dina? Do you have a toothache?

ما الأمر يا دينا؟ هل عمتك ألم في الأسنان؟

Yes. My tooth hurts!

نعم، أسننت تؤلمني!

Mom, can I have some milk and honey for my cough, please?

أمي، هل يمكنني الحصول على بعض الحليب والعسل لسعالتي، من فضلك؟

Ouch! My shoulder hurts!

أعني! كتفي تؤلمني!

What's the matter, Wael? Does your stomach hurt?

ما الأمر يا وائل؟ هل عمتك بطنك؟

No, I have a headache.

لا، لدي صداع.

Do you have a sore throat?

هل لديك التهاب في الحلق؟

Yes, I do! It really hurts, and I can't talk.

نعم، لدي التهاب في الحلق. إنه يؤلمني حقًا، وألا أستطيع التحدث.

Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صحيح أو (F) خطأ

1 Only four people came to the club today. ☐

2 My friend Tarek hurt his ankle. ☐

3 Amr had a cough. ☐

4 Lama had a toothache. ☐

2 Listen and complete. استمع واكمل

1 Dina talks to her

2 Dina has a

3 Dina's tooth

4 Dina should go to the

3 Read and match. اقرأ وامل

1 Did you have

a) from swimming.

2 Only five people

b) a good day at the club?

3 I think Lama went

c) came to the club today!

4 Amr has an earache

d) to the dentist.

1-() 2-() 3-() 4-()

4 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1 My friend is at the

a) doctor b) doctors c) doctor's d) vet

2 Only five people to the club today!

a) came b) wanted c) ate d) saw

3 His ear hurts. He has a/an

a) toothache b) stomachache c) backache d) earache

4 He has a toothache. He should go to the

a) carpenter b) dentist c) nurse d) teacher

5 The coach told us to be

a) careful b) careless c) sad d) bad

6 He has a He can't talk.

a) stomachache b) sore throat c) backache d) earache

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences. عد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

1 stomach - Does - hurt - your - ?

2 the dentist - Fares - went - to - .

3 about - friends - worried - I - am - my - .

4 used - a medicine - as - Doctors - honey - .

6 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

⇒ what's the matter

⇒ i can t talk.

Lesson (2)

SCIENCE

Main Vocabulary



glacier
نهر جليدي



stream
جدول مائي



lake
بحيرة



river
نهر



ocean
مخيط



trunk
أنف الفيل

Extra Vocabulary

health	الصحة	enormous	هائل	side	جانبا
excited	مسرور / متحمس	finally	في النهاية	fingers	أصابع اليد
incredible	لا يصدق	clever	ذكي / ماهر	smooth	ناعم
local	محلي	huge	هائل	flat	مسطح
farmer	فلاح	strong	قوي	rain	مطر
flexible	مرن	tail	ذيل	crops	محاصيل
dangerous	خطير	salt water	ماء مالح		
leaf	ورقة شجر	fresh water	مياه عذبة		
bathwater	مياه الاستحمام	drinking water	مياه الشرب		

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson

(2)

Definitions

التعريفات

blind	can't see	أعمى / كفيف
trunk	the very long nose of an elephant	أنف الفيل
tusk	a very long pointed tooth	ناب
spear	a long pointed stick	رمح

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
walk	walked	discover	discovered
touch	touched	reach	reached

Irregular verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
meet	met	find out	found out
hear	heard	understand	understood

Important expressions and prepositions

important for	مهم لـ	The Mediterranean Sea	البحر المتوسط
look like	يشبه	The Red Sea	البحر الأحمر
in the world	في العالم	It's like a wall.	إنه مثل حائط
good at	جيد في	You're both wrong!	كلاكما مخطئ!
pointed stick	عصا طويلة	shaped like a leaf	على شكل ورقة شجر
along the road	على طول الطريق	moral of the story	مغزى القصة



How many glasses of water do you drink every day?
كم كوبًا من الماء تشربه كل يوم؟

I drink 8 glasses of fresh water a day.



DESCRIBING THE ELEPHANT

وصف الفيل

A long time ago, there were six blind men who wanted to meet an elephant. They had heard many stories about these incredible animals, but each man had a different idea about what the elephant would look like.

منذ زمن بعيد، كان هناك ستة أشخاص مكفوفين يريدون مقابلة فيل. لقد سمعوا العديد من القصص عن هذه الحيوانات المدهشة، لكن كل رجل لديه فكرة مختلفة عن شكل الفيل.

One day, a local farmer was walking along the road with an elephant that worked on his farm. The farmer asked if the men would like to touch the elephant to discover how it looks. The men were very excited and walked over to the enormous animal.

في أحد الأيام، كان هناك مزارع محلي يسير على طول الطريق مع فيل يعمل في مزرعته. سأل المزارع عما إذا كان الرجال يرغبون في لمس الفيل ليكتشفوا كيف يبدو. كان الرجال متحمسين للغاية وساروا نحو الفيل الضخم.

The first man touched the side of the elephant. He said, "It's very tall and very strong. It's like a wall!"

لمس الرجل الأول جانب الفيل. وقال: "إنه طويل جدًا وقوي جدًا. إنه يشبه الجدار!"

The second man put his arms around the elephant's back leg. He said, "No, you're wrong! It's round and strong, like a tree trunk!"

وضع الرجل الثاني ذراعيه حول ساق الفيل الخلفية. وقال: "لا، أنت مخطئ! إنه مستدير وقوي. مثل جذع شجرة!"

When the third man put his hand on the elephant's trunk, he said, "You're both wrong! The elephant is long and flexible...it's just like a snake!"

وعندما وضع الرجل الثالث يده على خرطوم (زلومة) الفيل وقال: "كلاكما مخطئ! الفيل طويل ومرن... إنه فقط مثل الثعبان!"

The fourth man put his fingers against the elephant's tusk. He said, "It's hard, long, and smooth. I think it's dangerous like a spear!"

وضع الرجل الرابع أصابعه على ناب الفيل وقال: "إنه صلب وطويل وناعم. أعتقد أنه خطير مثل الرمح!"

The fifth man was very, very tall. He reached out and touched the elephant's ear. He said, "This elephant is smooth and flat, and shaped just like a leaf!"

كان الرجل الخامس طويلًا جدًا، مد يده ولمس أذن الفيل وقال: "هذا الفيل أملس ومستطوح. وشكله مثل ورقة الشجر!"

Finally, the sixth man put his hand on the elephant's tail. He said, "This elephant is not like a wall, a spear, or a snake. It's not like a leaf or tree trunk! This elephant is just like a rope!"

وأخيرًا، وضع الرجل السادس يده على ذيل الفيل. وقال: "هذا الفيل ليس مثل الجدار أو الرمح أو الثعبان، وليس مثل ورقة الشجر أو جذع شجرة! هذا الفيل يشبه مقطع الحبل!"

The farmer listened to everything the men said. He turned to them and said, "In fact, you're all correct! Each of you only touched one part of the elephant. If you stop for a moment, and listen to what you all think, you can all see what the elephant looks like."

استمع المزارع إلى كل ما قاله الرجال. والتمت إليهم وقال: "في الحقيقة، كلكم على حق! كل واحد منكم لمس فقط جزءًا واحدًا من الفيل. ولو توقفتم للحظة واستمعتم إلى ما يعتمدونه جميعًا، يمكنكم رؤية شكل الفيل."



Answer the following questions:

- What did the blind men want to find out?
- What did the first blind man say about the elephant?
- Which part of the elephant was like a tree trunk? Why?
- Why did the fourth blind man think the elephant's tusk was like a spear?
- Which part of the elephant was like a huge leaf?

Help your child listen and read the text.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ النص.

Activities

1 Listen and write T True or F False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

- 1 A local doctor was walking along the road. ☐
- 2 The man was walking with an elephant. ☐
- 3 The men were very excited. ☐
- 4 The men walked over to the small animal. ☐

2 Listen and complete. استمع واكمل.

- 1 The farmer listened to everything the _____ said.
- 2 In fact all men are _____!
- 3 Each of you only touched one part of the _____.
- 4 If you stop for a _____ you can all see what the elephant looks like.

3 Read and match. اقرأ واصل.

- 1 I drink eight glasses _____ animal in the world.
- 2 The elephant is the biggest _____ of fresh water a day.
- 3 The elephant is long _____ like a spear.
- 4 The six blind men wanted _____ and flexible.
- 5 I think it's dangerous _____ to meet an elephant.

1-() 2-() 3-() 4-() 5-()

4 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 The water of rivers is _____.
- a) bad b) fresh c) salt d) spicy

He is _____. He can't see.

- a) blind b) huge c) fast d) flexible

3 The elephant is a _____ animal.

- a) little b) huge c) small d) short

4 I have ten fingers on my _____.

- a) hands b) feet c) eyes d) legs

5 A _____ is a long pointed stick.

- a) spare b) chop c) spear d) space

6 A _____ is the very long nose of an elephant.

- a) trunk b) tail c) trick d) truck

7 A _____ is a very long pointed nose.

- a) test b) task c) tusk d) tooth

8 The Red Sea has _____ water.

- a) salt b) fresh c) thin d) sweet

5 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences. أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة.

1 water - Why - important - very - is - ?

2 8 - a day - I - water - glasses drink of .

3 the elephant - like - look - What - does - ?

4 a rope - like - is - This - elephant - .

6 Read the following text and answer the questions.

قرا النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

A long time ago, there were six blind men who wanted to meet an elephant. They had heard many stories about these incredible animals. The farmer asked if the men would like to touch the elephant to discover how it looks. The first man said, "It's very tall and very strong. It's like a wall!". The second man said, "No, you're wrong! It's round and strong, like a tree trunk!". The third man said, "You're both wrong! The elephant is long and flexible...it's just like a snake!". The fourth man said, "It's hard, long, and smooth. I think it's dangerous like a spear!". The fifth man said, "This elephant is smooth and flat, and shaped just like a leaf!". Finally, the sixth man said, "This elephant is not like a wall, a spear, or a snake. It's not like a leaf or tree trunk! This elephant is just like a rope!".

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1 The underlined word "blind" means they can't
 a) read b) see c) talk d) taste
- 2 The text is about a/an
 a) lion b) monkey c) tiger d) elephant

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 What does the second man think of the elephant?
- 4 Who thinks that the elephant is like a spear?

7 Write a paragraph of about (40) words.

اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

"The elephant"

Guiding words: (wild - huge - zoo - grass)

Lesson
(3 / A)

HOW ARE YOU?



Main Vocabulary

a cut	جرح	take medicine	يتناول الدواء
a bandage	ضمادة	playground	ملعب
come in	تفضل بالدخول	stay home	يبقى بالبيت
clean	ينظف	fall over	يسقط على

Listen and read.

Ashraf : Hello, Doctor. I don't feel well.
 مرحباً يا دكتور. أشعر أنني لست بحير.

Doctor : What's the matter, Ashraf?
 Do you have a headache?

Ashraf : No, Doctor. I don't have a headache.
 لا، يا دكتور. لست مصاباً بالصداع.

Doctor : Do you have a stomachache?
 هل لديك ألم في المعدة؟

Ashraf : No, Doctor. I don't have a stomachache.
 لا، يا دكتور. ليس لدي ألم في المعدة.

Doctor : Do you have a toothache?
 هل لديك ألم في الأسنان؟

Ashraf : No, Doctor. I don't have a toothache.
 I have ... I have ... Achoo!
 لا، يا دكتور. ليس لدي ألم في الأسنان. لدي ... لدي ... أتشوا!

Doctor : Oh, dear! You have a cold. Stay home, sleep well, and take this medicine.

أوه يا عزيزي! أنت مصاب بنزلة برد. ابق في المنزل ونم جيداً وتناول هذا الدواء.



Verb to "have" in the present simple

- We use (have) to talk about illness.

نستخدم الفعل (have) بمعنى (لديه / عنده / مصاب) مع المرض.

Forms

التكوين

I / They / You / We / Plural noun → have

e.g. I have a headache.

He / She / It / Singular noun → has

e.g. Amr has a stomachache.

Negative

المنفي

I / They / You / We / Plural noun → don't have

e.g. I don't have a sore throat.

He / She / It / Singular noun → doesn't have

e.g. He doesn't have a stomachache.

(Yes / No) question:

السؤال بنعم / لا

Do + I / they / you / we / plural noun → have....?

e.g. Do you have a headache?

- Yes, I do.

- No, I don't.

Does + he / she / it / singular noun → have....?

e.g. Does Noha have a toothache?

- Yes, she does.

- No, she doesn't.

Wh. question

السؤال المميز

Q.W + (do / does) + subject + have....?

e.g. What do you have?

- I have a cold.

e.g. What does she have?

- She has a backache.

1 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1 He has a on his arm.

a) cut

b) cup

c) cute

d) coat

2 Don't worry, I'll your cut.

a) eat

b) cut

c) clean

d) break

3 Stay home and this medicine.

a) give

b) take

c) do

d) break

4 I'll put a on the cut.

a) fridge

b) bridge

c) bandage

d) salt

5 you have a headache?

a) Do

b) Does

c) Are

d) Have

6 She a stomachache.

a) is

b) has

c) have

d) was

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة.

1 you - Do - an earache - have - ?

2 sore - a - I - throat - have - .

3 Nader - have - headache - Does - a - ?

Lesson (3 / B)

A SPECIAL HOSPITAL

Main Vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

relative	أحد الأقارب	injection	حقنة
unwell	ليس (على ما يرام / بصحة جيدة)	patient	مريض
staff	فريق العمل	helpful	متعاون
crowded	مزدحم	corridor	طرقه / ممر

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

city	مدينة كبيرة	alone	بمفرده	wonderful	رائع
member	عضو	busy	مشغول / مزدحم	hospital	مستشفى
India	دولة الهند	special	خاص / مميز	sick	مريض

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Present	Past	Present	Past
treat	يعالج	teach	يدرس
change	يغير	become	يصبح
travel	يسافر	know	يعرف
return	يعود	tell	يخبر

Important expressions and prepositions

look after	يعتني بـ	Not only.....but also	ليس فقط.....ولكن أيضا
care for	يعتني بـ	from all over the world	من جميع أنحاء العالم
give injection	يعطي حقنة	in the playground	في الملعب
instead of	بدلاً من	turn ... into	يحول إلى

Look and read.

A SPECIAL HOSPITAL

مستشفى متميزة

In a hospital in Bangalore, a city in southern India, there are many patients. The hospital treats patients from all over the country. With every patient, there are about ten family members.

في مستشفى في بنغالور، وهي مدينة في جنوب الهند، هناك العديد من المرضى. تعالج المستشفى المرضى من جميع أنحاء البلاد مع كل مريض، هناك حوالي عشرة أفراد من العائلة.

In India, it is unusual for a sick person to go to the hospital alone. Family usually go with their unwell relative. This means that the hospital is often very crowded and busy. But instead of telling family members that they can't visit their sick relatives, the staff at this hospital do something special. They turn a problem into something wonderful.

في الهند، من غير المعتاد أن يذهب المريض إلى المستشفى وحده. تذهب العائلة عادة مع قريبهم المريض. وهذا يعني أن المستشفى غالباً ما تكون مزدحمة ومشغولة جداً. لكن بدلاً من إخبار أفراد الأسرة بأنهم لا يستطيعون زيارة أقاربهم المرضى يقوم الموظفون في المستشفى بعمل شيء مميز. انهم يحولون المشكلة إلى شيء رائع.

They have classes to teach the family to look after the sick person. For example, some people learn how to change bandages and others learn how to give injections.

لديهم فصول لتعليم الأسرة الاعتناء بالشخص المريض. علي سبيل المثال، يتعلم بعض الأشخاص كيف يغيرون الضمادات ويتعلم آخرون كيفية إعطاء الحقن.

Each afternoon, staff from the hospital turn the corridors into classrooms.

بعد ظهر كل يوم، يقوم موظفو المستشفى بتحويل الممرات إلى فصول دراسية.

The nurses become teachers and the family members - and sometimes even the patients - become the students. Not only does this help the hospital staff, but it also helps the families to care for their relatives when they go home. The staff know that the lessons work because not as many patients return to the hospital now.

وتصبح الممرضات معلمات، ويصبح أفراد الأسرة - وأحياناً المرضى - طلاباً. هذا لا يساعد فقط موظفي المستشفى، ولكنه أيضاً يساعد العائلات في رعاية أقاربهم عند عودتهم إلى المنزل. يعلم الموظفون أن الدروس تنجح حيث أنه لا يعود الكثير من المرضى إلى المستشفى الآن.

The Prefixes السوابق / البادئات

We can use the prefix (un-) to make the opposite of an adjective:

يمكن أن نستخدم البادئة (un-) لتكوين عكس صفة

un

well

usual

fit

safe

unwell

unusual

unfit

unsafe

Some other prefixes that are used to show the opposite are (ir- / il- / im-).

البادئات الأخرى التي تستخدم لتكوين العكس هي (im- / il- / ir-).

Prefix	Use	Root word	Opposite word
ir	When the word begins with "r"	responsible مسئول	irresponsible غير مسئول
		regular منتظم	irregular غير منتظم
im	When the word begins with "m" or "p"	possible ممكن	impossible مستحيل
		moral أخلاقي	immoral غير أخلاقي
il	When the word begins with "l"	legal قانوني	illegal غير قانوني

1 Rewrite these sentences so they mean the opposite. Use the prefix (un-).

- Tarek is happy.
- The bridge is safe.
- Dad is fit.

2 Add the prefix (ir-, il-, or im-) to these words.

- legal
- polite
- moral
- regular

Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) false. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

- The text is about a club in India.
- The hospital is a very busy place.
- Many people go to the hospital with their unwell relatives.
- A few patients go to hospital now.

2 Listen and complete. استمع واكمل.

- Nahla fell over in the
- Nahla has a cut on her
- The nurse will put a on the cut.
- Nahla thanks

3 Read and match. اقرأ وامل.

- There are many very crowded.
- The hospital is patients in the hospital.
- Bangalore is a city in the playground.
- Nahla fell over in southern India.

1-() 2-() 3-() 4-()

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة.

1 a - Ali - throat - sore - has - .

2 over - in - My - the - fell - brother - playground - .

3 she - have - a headache - Does - ?

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5 Read the following text and answer the questions.
اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

In India, it is unusual for a sick person to go to the hospital alone. Family usually go with their unwell relative. This means that the hospital is often very crowded and busy. But instead of telling family members that they can't visit their sick relatives, the staff at this hospital do something special. They turn a problem into something wonderful. They have classes to teach the family to look after the sick person. For example, some people learn how to change bandages and others learn how to give injections.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1 The word "unwell" means
a) fine b) cool c) sick d) nice
- 2 The hospital is always and busy.
a) quiet b) crowded c) happy d) empty

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 What do the staff teach the visitors?
.....
- 4 What do people learn to do with sick relatives?
.....

6 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 The hospital treats
a) doctors b) nurses c) patients d) teachers
- 2 It's for a sick person to go to the hospital alone.
a) happy b) bad c) sad d) unusual
- 3 People learn to injections to patients in hospitals.
a) give b) stay c) make d) do

- 1 The is a group of people that work together.
a) injections b) patients c) relatives d) staff
- 2 Omar is happy but Tarek is
a) illegal b) irregular c) unhappy d) unfit
- 3 The bridge is dangerous. It's
a) safe b) unsafe c) impolite d) irregular
- 4 Mum is fit but dad is
a) unhappy b) happy c) unfit d) sad

7 Write a paragraph of about (40) words. اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

"Illnesses"

Guiding words:

(have - headache - stay - toothache - dentist - a cold - medicine)

8 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- 1 why do you take medicine
.....
- 2 she doesn't have a cold.
.....

Lesson (4)

THE POWER OF HONEY

Lesson 4

Main Vocabulary



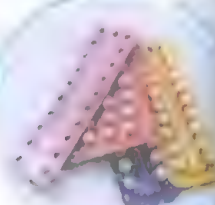
a cut knee



sunburn



sunscreen



pills



honey



lemon



bandage



bee

Extra Vocabulary

exactly

injury

illness

substance

types

skin

medical care

perhaps

recently

scientist

cupboard

power

عناية طبية

ربما

حديثاً / في الآونة الأخيرة

عالم / عالمة

خزانة مطبخ

قوة

Definitions

التعريفات

treatment medical care to help you get better

wound an injury that damages your skin

germs very small things that can make you ill
to get better يلتئم

Conjugation of verbs

نصريف الأفعال

contain

contained

mix

mixed

kill

killed

damage

damaged

use

used

know

knew

Important expressions and prepositions

enjoy + v + ing

يستمتع بـ

sweet basbousa

بسبوسة حلوة المذاق

used

يستخدم

for breakfast

للمفطار

treat illness

يعالج المرض

for thousands of years

لآلاف السنين

a jar of honey

برطمان عسل

good for

جيد لـ

on earth

على الأرض

make honey

يصنع العسل

Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.



I cut my knee last week. My grandma put a bandage on it.

جرحت ركبتي الأسبوع الماضي. وضعت لي جدتي ضمادة عليها.

Look and read.

نظر واقرأ.

Do you like honey? Perhaps you enjoy eating it for breakfast. Or maybe you enjoy it in a sweet basbousa. But did you know that honey isn't only a food? It is also used as a **treatment** for some injuries and illnesses.

In some countries, honey has been used by doctors for thousands of years. It was first used to treat **wounds** by Egyptian doctors around 5,000 years ago. Recently, scientists have tried to find out exactly why honey is so good for **healing** wounds and treating illnesses.

في بعض البلدان، يستخدم الأطباء العسل منذ آلاف السنين. تم استخدامه لأول مرة لعلاج الجروح من قبل المصريين منذ حوالي 5000 عام. في الأونة الأخيرة، حاول العلماء بالضبط معرفة سبب كون العسل مفيداً جداً في التئام الجروح وعلاج الأمراض.

Scientists know that some types of honey contain things that can help to kill **bacteria**. This helps wounds to heal more quickly. You must be careful, however. The honey that doctors use is a special honey only that is safe to use as a treatment. So, if you have a jar of honey in your cupboard, you can mix it with milk to make your cough better, but don't put it on your cut knee!



يعلم العلماء أن بعض أنواع العسل تحتوي على أشياء يمكن أن تساعد في قتل البكتيريا. هذا يساعد الجروح على الشفاء بسرعة أكبر. ومع ذلك يجب أن تكون حذراً. إن العسل الذي يستخدمه الأطباء هو عسل خاص وأمن للاستخدام كعلاج. لذا، إذا كان لديك برطمان من العسل في خزانةك، يمكنك مزجه مع الحليب لتحسين السعال (الحمى)، ولكن لا تضعه على ركبته المجروحة!

Now read the full article. Check (✓) the facts that are mentioned:

- ☐ Bees make honey.
- ☐ Honey is the sweetest substance on Earth.
- ☐ Doctors have used honey for thousands of years.
- ☐ Some types of honey can kill bacteria.

Help your child read the text.

ساعد طفلك ويقرأ النص.

1 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 When I have a _____ throat, I can't talk.
a) sir b) sore c) sow d) sort
- 2 Do you have a cut _____?
a) knot b) knit c) knee d) knight
- 3 We use _____ to protect us from the sun.
a) pills b) sunscreen c) screen d) bandage
- 4 I cut my knee last week. My grandma put a _____ on it.
a) lemon b) bandage c) poster d) pill
- 5 Honey is used as a _____ for some injuries.
a) bacteria b) wound c) treatment d) sunscreen
- 6 Honey is so good for _____ wounds.
a) heating b) taking c) healing d) hating
- 7 I have a _____ of honey.
a) jar b) piece c) spoon d) fork
- 8 _____ make honey.
a) Bees b) Elephants c) Monkeys d) Lions
- 9 Doctors used _____ for treatment.
a) honey b) water c) oil d) salt

2 Match the words with their meanings.

صل الكلمات بمعانيها.

- | | |
|-------------|---|
| 1 treatment | a to get better |
| 2 wound | b very small things that can make you ill |
| 3 bacteria | c medical care to help you get better |
| 4 heal | d an injury that damages your skin |

1- () 2- () 3- () 4- ()

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

PRONUNCIATION



fan
مروحة



leaf
ورقة شجر



ferry
معدية / عبارة



safe
أمن



life
حياة

How to make the /f/ sound:

- Rest your top teeth on your lower lip.
- Blow, but don't use your voice!

الف /ف/ صوت

الف /ف/ صوت

الف /ف/ صوت

الف /ف/ صوت



van
فان



leave
يفادر



view
منظر

How to make the /v/ sound:

- Rest your top teeth on your lower lip.
- Blow, but do use your voice!

الف /ف/ صوت

الف /ف/ صوت

الف /ف/ صوت

الف /ف/ صوت

- I have a pet frog.
- I have a very long scarf.
- Hany is a vet.
- Do you like vegetables?

1 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- When it is hot, I turn on the fan.
a) fun b) fan c) foot d) tooth
- A new leaf grows on the tree.
a) leaf b) loaf c) life d) lift
- A few friends saw the very fine view of the trees.
a) view b) few c) safe d) ferry
- The ferry is very fast.
a) view b) fun c) ferry d) tree
- It's safe to save your money here.
a) happy b) sad c) angry d) safe

2 Read and match.

- Hany is a frog.
 - Do you like vet.
 - We like watching vegetables?
 - I have a pet television.
- 1- () 2- () 3- () 4- ()

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences. أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة.

- here - It's - safe - save - money - your - to - .
- along - have - Do - scarf - you - ?
- she - television - watching - Does - like - ?

MATH

A bar chart التمثيل البياني بالأعمدة

A bar chart is a way of showing information.

التمثيل البياني بالأعمدة هو طريقة لعرض المعلومات.

Look and read. Then label the bar chart:

Last week, 30 students were asked about their favorite free-time activity to stay healthy. Here is the result of their survey. Which favorite activity was enjoyed by the biggest number of students?

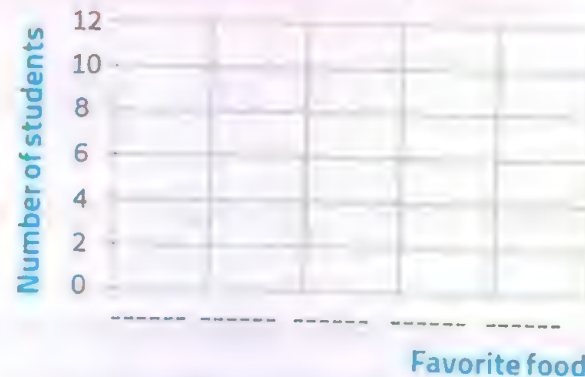
في الأسبوع الماضي تم سؤال ٣٠ طالباً عن أنشطة وقت الفراغ المفضلة لديهم. وما هي نتيجة الدراسة. أي نشاط مفضل لأكثر عدد من الطلاب؟

Favorite activity	No. of students
Swimming	6
Football	15
Reading	3
Taking long walks	5
Cooking	1



Now use this table to complete the bar chart:

Favorite food	No. of students
Ful medames	6
Koshari	6
Kofta	7
Fiteer baladi	9
Shawerma	5



1 Look at the bar chart, shade then answer the questions.

انظر إلى التمثيل البياني بالأعمدة، ظلل ثم أجب عن الأسئلة.

Favorite sport	No. of students
Football	8
Basketball	10
Volleyball	6
Handball	4
Tennis	2



- What's the most favorite sport?
- What's the least favorite sport?
- How many students prefer volleyball?

2 Use the following table to complete the bar chart.

استخدم الجدول التالي لتكمل التمثيل البياني بالأعمدة.

Favorite subject	No. of students
English	25
Math	20
Art	5
History	10
Science	15



Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

- Honey has been used by teachers.
- Honey was first used to treat wounds.
- Doctors used honey to treat wounds 5.000 years ago.
- Honey is bad for healing wounds.

☐
☐
☐
☐

Help your child read and learn about a bar chart.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعلم عن التمثيل البياني بالأعمدة.

2 Listen and complete.

استمع وأكمل

- 1 Omar talks to _____.
- 2 Kamel's favorite food is rice with _____.
- 3 Kamel likes sweet _____.
- 4 Kamel likes _____ juice.

3 Read and match.

اقرأ واصل.

- 1 I cut my knee a) in the very big van?
- 2 I enjoy eating b) very fast.
- 3 Is there a fan c) last week.
- 4 The ferry is d) honey for breakfast.

1- () 2- () 3- () 4- ()

4 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 Bees make _____.
- a) juice b) honey c) water d) oil
- 2 Honey is the _____ substance on Earth.
- a) sweetest b) worst c) fastest d) slowest
- 3 _____ use a special honey as treatment.
- a) Teachers b) Vets c) Doctors d) Bakers
- 4 Some types of honey can _____ bacteria.
- a) live b) kill c) break d) make
- 5 You can mix honey with milk to make your _____ better.
- a) calf b) cough c) laugh d) enough

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

- 1 you - Do - vegetables - like - ?
- 2 popular - is - Which - food - most - the - ?
- 3 lovely - leaf - tree - the - on - Leave - the - .
- 4 We - watching - like - television - .

6 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Do you like honey? Perhaps you enjoy eating it for breakfast. But did you know that honey isn't only a food? It is also used as a treatment for some injuries and illnesses. Scientists know that some types of honey contain things that can help to kill bacteria. This helps wounds to heal more quickly. You must be careful, however. The honey that doctors use is a special honey only that is safe to use as a treatment. So, if you have a jar of honey in your cupboard, you can mix it with milk to make your cough better, but don't put it on your cut knee!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1 The underlined word "quickly" means _____.
- a) slow b) fast c) nice d) happy
- 2 Some types of honey can help _____ bacteria.
- a) do b) make c) take d) kill

B) Answer the following questions.

- 1 What's the main idea of the text?
- 2 How can you make your cough better?

- WRITING - PROJECT

Main Vocabulary

balanced diet	نظام غذائي متوازن	insect bite cream	كريم لعض الحشرات
experts	خبراء	safety pins	برشمتون أمان
bandage	ضمادة	rubber bands	رباط مطاطي
sunscreen	كريم واقٍ من الشمس	medical gloves	قفازات طبية
scissors	مقص	cleansing wipes	مناديل مبللة
soap	صابون		

Extra Vocabulary

desert	صحراء	poster	ملصق	presentation	عرض / تقديم
pack	عباءة	headings	عناوين	important	هام
useful	نافع / مفيد	decide	يقرر	especially	مخاصة / خصوصاً
remember	يتذكر				

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
need	needed	enjoy	enjoyed
check	checked	remember	remembered

Irregular verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
spend	spent	make	made
keep	kept	take	took

Important expressions and prepositions

first-aid kit	صندوق الإسعافات الأولية	a school trip	رحلة مدرسية
In addition to	بالإضافة إلى	make sure	يأكد
plenty of water	الكثير من الماء	responsible for	مسئول عن
a great way	طريقة رائعة	focus on	يركز على
do exercise	تدرب	at school	في المدرسة
lots of	الكثير من	go to bed	يذهب للفرش
enough sleep	نوم كافٍ	work well	يعمل بشكل جيد
in case	في حالة	at the end	في النهاية

Healthy things to do

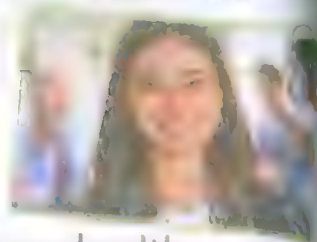
أشياء صحية تفعلها

playing sport	لعب الرياضة
eating vegetables	تناول الخضروات
reading books	قراءة الكتب
getting enough sleep	الحصول على قسط كافٍ من النوم
visiting a doctor	زيارة الطبيب
spending time with friends	قضاء وقت مع الأصدقاء
drinking plenty of water	شرب الكثير من الماء



Read the following presentation.

اقرأ بعرض التقديمي التالي.



My presentation today is about staying healthy.

It is really important to eat healthy foods like fruit and vegetables and to have a **balanced diet**. There are lots of other things that we can do to look after our health.

يوسوع عرضي اليوم عن البقاء بصحة جيدة. من المهم تناول الأطعمة الصحية مثل الفاكهة والخضراوات.

نظام غذائي متوازن. هناك الكثير من الأشياء الأخرى التي يمكننا القيام بها للاعتناء بصحتنا.

You should do some exercise every day. It's very important to keep your body moving. Playing sport at school or with friends is a good way to exercise.

يجب عليك القيام ببعض التمارين كل يوم. من المهم جدًا أن تبقى جسمك في حركة. إن ممارسة الرياضة في

مدرسة أو مع الأصدقاء طريقة جيدة للتمرين.

Another thing you can do is to go to bed early. It's important to get enough sleep. **Experts** think you should get between eight and nine hours of sleep every night.

شيء آخر يمكنك القيام به وهو الذهاب إلى الفراش مبكرًا. من المهم الحصول على قسط كافٍ من النوم. يعتقد

الخبراء أنك يجب أن تنام ما بين ثماني وتسع ساعات كل ليلة.

In addition to this, one of the best ways to stay healthy is to spend time with your friends. It's not only your body that you need to keep healthy, you should make time to focus on being happy, too. Spending time with your family and friends is a great way to do this.

بالإضافة إلى ذلك، فإن أحد أفضل الطرق للبقاء بصحة جيدة هو أن تقضي وقتًا مع أصدقائك. ليس فقط جسمك هو ما تحتاج للحفاظ على صحتك، بل يجب أن تخصص وقتًا للتركيز على السعادة أيضًا. إن قضاء وقت

مع عائلتك وأصدقائك طريقة رائعة للقيام بذلك.

A model paragraph

"Staying healthy"

To stay healthy, it's very important to drink plenty of water. This keeps your body working well. It's especially important if it's a very hot day or if you're exercising.

Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) false. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

- It's important to drink plenty of water. ☐
- Drinking water doesn't keep your body working well. ☐

3 You should have unhealthy food. ☐4 Sports make us healthy and fit. ☐

2 Read and match. اقرأ وامل.

- | | |
|----------------------|---------------------------|
| a You should get | a about staying healthy. |
| b You should drink | b enough sleep. |
| c My presentation is | c plenty of water. |
| d Do you spend | d a good way to exercise. |
| e Playing sport is | e time with your friends? |

1-() 2-() 3-() 4-() 5-()

3 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 Asmaa says it's important to havediet.
a) different b) bad c) unhealthy d) balanced
- 2 Asmaa says that sport is a good way to exercise.
a) having b) playing c) eating d) making
- 3 You should between 8 and 9 hours every night.
a) eat b) sleep c) run d) swim
- 4 You should make time to focus being happy.
a) on b) in c) at d) of

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

- think you should get enough sleep every night
- a) Teachers b) Vets c) Nurses d) Experts
- My presentation today is about _____ healthy.
- a) studying b) doing c) staying d) running
- You should drink _____ of water.
- a) plant b) planet c) plan d) plenty
- Your class is responsible _____ packing the first-aid kit.
- a) for b) to c) at d) on
- Take _____ in case someone cuts their knee.
- a) bandages b) soap c) safety pins d) scissors
- Nurses and doctors wear medical _____.
- a) soap b) gloves c) wipes d) bandages

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة.

should - You - foods - healthy - eat - .

of - you - Do - plenty - water - drink - ?

spend - his friends - with - time - Omar - Does - ?

5 Write a paragraph of about (40) words. اكتب فقرة من 40 كلمة.

"How to stay healthy"

Guiding elements: - Things to do. - Things not to do.

Review on Unit (8)

Vocabulary

كلمات

Illnesses

الأمراض

earache	ألم في الأذن	a cough	سعال / كحة	a cold	زكام
toothache	ألم في الأسنان	stomachache	ألم في البطن	headache	صداع
backache	ألم في الظهر	a sore throat	التهاب الحنجرة		

Science & Health

العلوم والصحة

river	نهر	pills	الحبوب الطبية	flexible	مرن
stream	جريان مائي	injection	حقنة طبية	relatives	أقرباء
glacier	أنهر جليدية	patient	مريض	expert	خبير
lake	بحيرة	unwell	غير سليم / مريض	honey	عسل
ocean	بحر	staff	طاقم عمل	medicine	دواء
bandage	ضمادة	corridor	ممر / فoyer	lemon	ليمون
a cut	جرح	sunscreen	واقي الشمس	helpful	مفيد

Pronunciation

fan	leaf	life	ferry	few	safe
van	leave	live	very	view	save

Math

Bar charts التمثيل البياني بالأعمدة

Favorite activity	No. of students
Swimming	6
Football	15
Reading	3
Taking long walks	5
Cooking	1



Verb to "have" in the present simple

- We use (have) to talk about illness.

نستخدم الفعل (have) بمعنى (لديه / عنده / مصاب) مع المرض.

Form:

Subject + (have / has) ...

eg. I **have** a headache.

Negative:

Subject + (don't have / doesn't have) ...

eg. I **don't have** a sore throat.

(Yes / No) question:

(Do / Does) + subject + have..?

eg. Do you **have** a headache? 😊 - Yes, I do. ☹️ - No, I don't.

Wh- question

Q.W + (do / does) + subject + have..?

eg. What do you **have**?

eg. What does she **have**?

Opposite Prefixes بادئات تعطي عكس المعنى

un	well	غير	unwell	غير معافى
	usual	عادي	unusual	غير عادي
ir	responsible	مسئول	irresponsible	غير مسئول
	regular	منتظم	irregular	غير منتظم
im	possible	ممكّن	impossible	مستحيل
	polite	مؤدّب	impolite	غير مؤدّب
il	legal	قانوني	illegal	غير قانوني

Writing Corner

Write a paragraph of about (40) words. اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

"Illnesses"

There are a lot of illnesses. We can have headache, earache, backache, stomachache, toothache, cold and sore throat. When we have a headache, we should have a rest. When we have a toothache, we should go to the dentist. When we have a cold, we should stay home and take medicine. When we have sore throat, we can't talk.

"Staying healthy"

It's important to eat healthy foods like fruit and vegetables and to have a balanced diet. We should do some exercise every day. Playing sport is a good way to exercise. We should have enough sleep every night. We should spend time with our friends and family, too.

"Honey"

We enjoy eating honey for breakfast. It's also used as a treatment for some injuries and illnesses. It was used by Egyptian doctors to treat wounds 5.000 years ago. Some types of honey can kill bacteria. It can make your cough better.

Dictation on Unit (8)

Lesson (1)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	صداع		آلم في الأذن
	زكام / نزلة برد		آلم في الأسنان
	كحة / سعال		آلم في الظهر
	التهاب الحلق		آلم في المعدة

Lesson (2)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	محيط		نهر جليدي
	حبل		جدول مائي
	محاصيل		بحيرة
	أصابع اليد		نهر

Lesson (3)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	ملعب		جرح
	متعاون		ضمادة
	مريض		ينظف
	حقنة طبية		يتناول الدواء

Lesson (4)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	ليمون		أقراص الدواء
	عسل		كريم واقني من الشمس
	نحلة		كريم لحروق الشمس
	مرض		جرح بالركبة

Lessons (5 & 6)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	صابون		رباط مطاطي
	ملحق		جوانتي طبي
	يقرر		مناديل مبللة
	صندوق الإسعافات الأولية		مقص

Activities on Unit (8)

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

- Doctors say that some types of honey can kill bacteria.
- Honey helps to heal wounds quickly.
- The honey that doctors use is a normal honey.
- Honey with oil can make your cough better.

☐
☐
☐
☐

2 Listen and complete.

استمع واكمل.

- Amr has a
- He eats lots of
- He should go to the
- Amr talks to

3 Read and match.

اقرأ وصل.

- | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1 It's very important | a in the playground. |
| 2 Some types of honey | b to drink plenty of water. |
| 3 My grandma put | c can kill bacteria. |
| 4 Do you have an | d a bandage on the cut. |
| 5 I fell over | e earache? |

- 1- () 2- () 3- () 4- () 5- ()

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

It is really important to eat healthy foods like fruit and vegetables and to have a balanced diet. There are lots of other things that we can do to look after our health. You should do some exercise every day. Playing sport at school or with friends is a good way to exercise.

Another thing you can do is to go to bed early. It's important to get enough sleep. Experts think you should get between eight and nine hours of sleep every night. In addition to this, one of the best ways to stay healthy is to spend time with your friends. It's not only your body that you need to keep healthy, you should make time to focus on being happy, too. Spending time with your family and friends is a great way to do this.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1 The adjective "healthy" means _____ for our bodies.
a) good b) bad c) ugly d) late
- 2 _____ think you should get enough sleep every night.
a) Doctors b) Experts c) Students d) Nurses

B) Answer the following questions.

1 How many hours should we sleep every night?

2 Who do we need to spend time with?

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة.

- 1 a sore - Do - have - you - throat - ?
- 2 of - kill - Some - bacteria - honey - types - can - .
- 3 you - the - club - a good day - at - Did - have - ?
- 4 I'm - worried - friends - my - about - .

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- 1 is there a fan in the big van
- 2 you should go to the dentist

7 Write a paragraph of about (40) words.

اكتب فقرة من 40 كلمة.

"Staying healthy"

Guiding questions:

- What things should you do?
- What things shouldn't you do?

Unit 9 My favorite animal

Lesson (1)

WILDLIFE

Listen and say.

اسمك وقل.



penguin
طائر البطريق



kangaroo
كنغر



panda
دب الباندا



dolphin
دولفين



Animals
الحيوانات



bat
خفاش



snail
حلزون / الكسول



parrot
ببغاء



lion
أسد

In this unit the student will...

• listen, read, research, and write about animals.

يستمع ويقرأ ويبحث ويكتب عن الحيوانات.

• listen and read about a trip to a wildlife park.

يستمع ويقرأ عن رحلة إلى متنزه للحياة البرية.

• learn how to say /w/ and /v/ sounds.

يتعلم كيفية نطق الصوتين /w/ و /v/.

• write an email about an unusual animal.

يكتب رسالة إلكترونية عن حيوان غير عادي.

• research and make an infographic about animals in a habitat.

يبحث ويقوم بعمل مخطط عن حيوانات في موطن معيشتهم.

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات

Extra Vocabulary

garden	حديقة	beautiful	جميل	colorful	ملون
rainforest	غابة مطيرة	pouch	كيس / جراب	ocean	محميط
different	مختلف	bamboo	خيزران	wonderful	رائع
awesome	مذهل / مذهل	wildlife park			متنزه للحياة البرية

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

Present	Past
jump	يقفز jumped
stay	يمكن stayed
repeat	يكرر repeated
look	يبدو looked
enjoy	يستمتع enjoyed

Irregular verbs

Present	Past
fly	يطير flew
swim	يسبح swam
feed	يطعم fed
hide	يختبئ hid
do	يفعل did

Important expressions and prepositions

at night	ليلاً	have got to	يُضطر إلى
swim in a group	يسبح في مجموعة	have a day out	يُخرج يومًا خارج المنزل
stay in	يُقيم في	in a special place	في مكان خاص
look so cool	يبدو رائعًا جدًا	do a project	قوم بمشروع
in the dark	في الظلام	at school	في المدرسة

اقرأ وتعلم.

Read and learn.

A **snail** lives in the garden. It has a shell. It doesn't have legs or arms.

الحلزون يعيش في الحديقة. له صدفة وليس له أرجل أو أذرع.

A **kangaroo** lives in Australia. It jumps on two legs.

الكنغر يعيش في أستراليا ويقفز على ساقيين.

A **bat** flies at night. It sleeps upside down on trees.

الخفاش يطير ليلاً وينام مقلوبًا على الأشجار.

A **penguin** lives on ice and snow. It's black and white. It can swim, but it can't fly.

البطريق يعيش على الثلج والجليد. إنه أبيض وأسود. يستطيع السباحة، لكنه لا يستطيع الطيران.

A **parrot** is a bird. It is very beautiful and colorful. It lives in the rainforest.

الببغاء طائر. إنه جميل وملون. يعيش في الغابة المطيرة.

A **lion** lives in Africa. It's a very big cat. It's very strong.

الأسد يعيش في أفريقيا. إنه قط ضخم (كبير). إنه قوي جدًا.

A **dolphin** is very friendly. It swims in a group with its family in the ocean.

الدولفين ودود جدًا. يسبح في مجموعة مع أسرته في المحيط.

A **panda** lives in China. It eats bamboo. It's big, and black and white.

تعيش الباندا في الصين. تأكل نبات الخيزران. إنه كبير ولونه أسود وأبيض.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Ramess: Hi! I had a wonderful day out yesterday with my family.
ميجنا! لقد قضيت يوماً رائعاً في الخارج مع عائلتي بالأمس.

Ayman: Where did you go?
إلى أين ذهبت؟

Ramess: I went to the new wildlife park - it was awesome!
ت إلى متنزه الحياة البرية الجديد - كان رائعاً!

Ayman: What did you see? Could you go near the lions?
إذا رأيت؟ هل استطعت الاقتراب من الأسود؟

Ramess: No, we stayed in the car. But we could see them through the trees. The kangaroos were interesting, too. When they are little, they can sit inside their mom's pouch - it's so sweet!
لا، لم نخرج من السيارة. لكننا كنا نرىهم من خلال الأشجار. كانت الكيغروسات مثيرة للاهتمام أيضاً. عندما يكونون صغاراً، يمكنهم الجلوس داخل جيب أمهم - إنه حلو جداً!

Ayman: What birds did you see?
ما الطيور التي رأيتها؟

Ramess: Lots, but my favorites were the parrots. They were so beautiful and they could talk! We said some words for them to repeat!
الكثير، ولكن المفضلة لدي كانت الببغاوات. كانت جميلة جداً ويمكنهم التحدث! قلنا لهم بعض الكلمات لكي يرددوها!

Ayman: What about animals that like the cold? Did you see any?
وماذا عن الحيوانات التي تحب البرد؟ هل رأيت أي واحدة؟

Ramess: Yes, penguins! They were in a special place inside. It was cold, like a fridge. We fed them some fish! I love penguins - they can swim so well and they look so cool!
نعم، البطريق! كانوا في مكان خاص جداً داخل المتنزه. كان بارداً، مثل ثلاجة. قمنا بتغذيةهم ببعض السمك! أحب البطريق - يمكنهم السباحة جيداً ويبدوون رائعين!

Ayman: Wow! Was there anything you wanted to see but couldn't?
واو! هل كان هناك أي شيء أردت رؤيته ولكنك لم تستطع؟

Ramess: The bats. I'm doing a project on bats at school, so I really wanted to see them! But they were all hiding and I couldn't see them in the dark!
الخفافيش. أقوم بمشروع عن الخفافيش في المدرسة، لذلك أردت حقاً أن أراهم لكنهم جميعاً مخبئون ولم أتمكن من رؤيتهم في الظلام.

Ayman: Oh well, it sounds amazing! I've got to feed my rabbit now that's the most wildlife I'll see today!
حسناً، يبدو رائعاً! يجب عليّ إطعام أرنبتي الآن، إنها الوحيدة التي سأراها اليوم!



Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

1 Omar went to the zoo with his friends.

2 They saw many animals.

3 Omar saw the parrots.

4 Omar saw the bats.

2 Listen and complete. استمع واكمل.

1 Omar went to the

2 The park was

3 Omar saw lions and

4 Omar saw parrots and

3 Read and match. اقرأ واصل.

1 A kangaroo lives

2 Dolphins are

3 Lions are

4 I went to

a) the wildlife park.

b) in Australia.

c) friendly animals.

d) very strong.

1-()

2-()

3-()

4-()

4 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1 A lives in Australia. It jumps on two legs.

a) bat

b) lion

c) panda

d) kangaroo

2 A is a very big cat. It's very strong.

a) parrot

b) panda

c) lion

d) dolphin

- 1 A _____ is a bird. It's very beautiful and colorful.
a) dolphin b) parrot c) panda d) lion
- 2 A panda eats
a) insects b) paper c) bamboo d) snakes
- 3 A can't fly.
a) parrot b) penguin c) bat d) bird
- 4 I've got to my rabbit.
a) feed b) eat c) run d) play
- 5 When kangaroos are little, they can sit inside their mom's
a) coach b) couch c) pouch d) bed
- 6 like to swim in a group with their family in the ocean.
a) Lions b) Bats c) Pandas d) Dolphins
- 7 **Reorder the words to make correct sentences.**
اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.
- 1 colorful - and - Parrots - birds - are - beautiful - .
- 2 did - go - Where - yesterday - you - ?
- 3 went - to - Ramez - park - a wildlife - .
- 4 did - What - see - you - there ?

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

did Hamza see any animals

7 Write a paragraph of about (40) words.

اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

A visit to a wildlife park

Guiding words:

- 1- Where did you go?
- 2- Who did you go with?
- 3- How did you go?
- 4- What did you see?
- 5- How did you find it?

WHAT COULD YOU DO?

Can - Can't

الاستخدام

Usage:

We use "can" to talk about something we are able to do in the present.

نستخدم "can" للتعبير عن شيء نستطيع فعله في الحاضر.

التكوين

Form:

Subject (الفاعل) + can + inf. (المصدر)

e.g. Birds can fly.

Negative:

Subject (الفاعل) + can't + inf. (المصدر)

e.g. Penguins can't fly.

Yes / No question

Can + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (المصدر) ...?

e.g. - Can a parrot fly? - Yes, it can.

✓ Write can or can't :

- 1 Bats fly very fast.
- 2 Snails move quickly.
- 3 Parrots fly.
- 4 Pandas drive a car.

Help your child use "can" to express ability in the present.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم (can) للتعبير عن القدرة في الحاضر.

Could - Couldn't

Usage:

We use "Could" to talk about something we were able to do in the past.

نستخدم "Could" للتعبير عن شيء كنا نستطيع فعله في الماضي.

Form:

Subject (الفاعل) + could + inf. (الفعل)

e.g. I could speak French.

e.g. I could ride a bike.

Negative:

Subject (الفاعل) + couldn't + inf. (الفعل)

e.g. I couldn't take the metro so I had to walk.

e.g. They couldn't fly their kites.

Yes / No question

Could + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (الفعل) ...?

e.g. - Could you write when you were five? - Yes, I could.

Write could or couldn't :

1 When I was two, I _____ use a computer.

2 I _____ read when I was one.

3 My sister _____ play chess when she was five, but she _____ when she was eight.

4 My cousin _____ run when he was a baby.

5 I _____ swim when I was a baby, and everyone was amazed.

6 _____ you speak English when you were five?

1 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1 Birds _____ fly.
a) can b) can't c) couldn't d) isn't

2 Bats _____ fly very fast.
a) couldn't b) can't c) can d) isn't

3 Penguins _____ fly.
a) can b) could c) can't d) isn't

4 When I was two, I _____ use a computer.
a) can b) can't c) couldn't d) isn't

5 I _____ read when I was one.
a) can b) can't c) could d) couldn't

6 _____ you speak English when you were five?
a) Can b) Could c) Is d) Has

7 I _____ swim when I was a baby and everyone was amazed.
a) can b) could c) can't d) isn't

8 I couldn't say anything in German last year, but now I _____.
a) can b) can't c) could d) couldn't

9 Last year, he _____ run very quickly, but now he can.
a) can't b) could c) can d) couldn't

10 Sorry, I _____ help you with your homework. I'm busy.
a) can b) can't c) could d) couldn't

2 Complete the sentences using can / can't, could or couldn't.

1 Amr _____ see the board, so he moved to the front.

2 Kangaroos _____ jump very high.

3 Ostriches _____ run very fast, but they _____ fly.

4 I had a sore throat, so I _____ talk.

Lesson (2 / 8)

THE TRAVELERS AND THE TREE



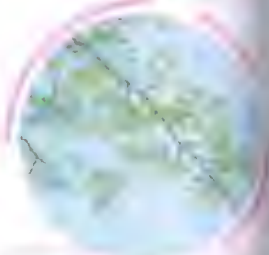
nuts



exhausted



trunk of a tree



branch of a tree

Extra Vocabulary

famous	مشهور	useless	عديم الفائدة	shelter	مأوى
ungrateful	خاسد / ناكر للجميل	rest	راحة	comfortable	مريح
travelers	مسافرون	wind	رياح	traders	تجار
lake	بحيرة	shade	ظل	value	قيمة
breeze	نسيم	moral	أخلاقي / معنوي	humans	البشر

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

Present	Past
stop	stopped
rest	rested
save	saved

Irregular verbs

Present	Past
fall	fell
wake up	woke up
keep	kept

Important expressions and prepositions

live for ...	يعيش لـ	give shelter	يعطي مأوى
a meeting point	نقطة التقاء	rest under	يرتاح تحت
wake up	يستيقظ	save life	يلقذ حياة
look around	يبحث / ينظر	important for	مهم لـ

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (2)

استمع وقراء

Listen and read.

Once there was a very big old tree in a hot, dry land. It had lived for many years. Its trunk was very wide and it had many green branches. It was famous because it was the only tree where it lived, and it gave shelter and rest to hundreds of travelers as they moved across the country. It was near four towns and many villages in its area and was a meeting point for traders.

كانت هناك شجرة كبيرة قديمة في أرض حارة وجافة. كانت تعيش منذ سنوات عديدة. كان جذعها عريضاً جداً ولها فروع خضراء كثيرة. كانت مشهورة لأنها كانت الشجرة الوحيدة التي كانت تعيش فيها. كانت تعطي المأوى والراحة لمئات المسافرين عندما كانوا يتحركون عبر البلاد. كانت قريبة من أربع مدن وقرى في منطقتها. كانت نقطة التقاء للتجار.

One day two travelers, who were new to the area, were walking across the field and saw the tree. It was a very hot, dry day and one of them said, "Let's stop under that tree, where there's some shade." "That's a very good idea," said his friend. They rested under the tree and drank some water. They then enjoyed the shade and the cool breeze. As they were exhausted, they soon fell asleep.

في يوم واحد، كان هناك مسافران جدد في المنطقة. كانوا يمشون عبر الحقل عندما رأوا الشجرة. كان يوم حار وجاف جداً. قال أحدهم، "دعنا نجلس تحت تلك الشجرة، حيث هناك بعض الظل." "هذه فكرة جيدة جداً،" قال صديقه. راحا تحت الشجرة وشربا بعض الماء. ثم استمتعوا بالظل والرياح الباردة. عندما كانوا متعبين، سقطوا نياماً.

When they woke up, one of the travelers felt hungry. Neither of them had any food in their bags so they looked up at the branches of the tree. "This tree is useless," one of them said. "It has no food for us - there are no nuts or fruit on its branches." "But it has shade and it's keeping us cool," said the other.

عندما استيقظوا، شعر أحدهم بالجوع. لم يكن لديهم أي طعام في حقائبهم. نظروا إلى فروع الشجرة وقال أحدهم، "هذه الشجرة عديمة الفائدة. ليس لدينا طعام هنا - لا هناك فواكه أو مكسرات على فروعها." "لكنها تعطينا ظلًا وتبقينا باردين،" قال الآخر.

But the tree heard the first traveler's words and it was angry. "How can you be so ungrateful?" It said, "You came to me feeling hot and tired. I gave you a cool, comfortable place to sleep and I probably saved your life. Look, there is no other cool place to sleep near here." The travelers looked around them and saw the tree was correct and felt very sorry.

لكن الشجرة سمعت كلمات المسافر الأول وكانت غاضبة. "كيف يمكنك أن تكون خاسداً؟" قالت، "كنت قد أعطيتك مكاناً بارداً ومريحاً للنوم وربما أنقذت حياتك. انظر، لا يوجد مكان آخر بارد للنوم بالقرب من هنا." نظر المسافران حولهم ووجدوا أن الشجرة كانت على حق. شعروا بالأسف الشديد.

Help your child listen and read the text.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ النص.



Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

- 1 The trunk had many green branches.
- 2 The tree was very small in a cold land.
- 3 The tree gave shelter and rest to hundreds of travelers.
- 4 The tree was near three towns.

2 Read and match.

- | | |
|------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1 He rested under a tree | a he felt hungry. |
| 2 The travelers were walking | b he saved my life. |
| 3 I was grateful to him as | c and drank some water. |
| 4 He had no food so | d across the field. |

1-() 2-() 3-() 4-()

3 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 A breeze is a little
a) wind b) lake c) sea d) river
- 2 When something is useless, we use it.
a) can b) can't c) may d) could
- 3 When someone is He thanks others for doing something good.
a) grateful b) ungrateful c) great d) sad
- 4 When something is comfortable. It's to sit on or wear.
a) nice b) not nice c) not easy d) not simple
- 5 A meeting point is somewhere where people
a) cook b) meet c) live d) draw

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

One day two travelers, who were new to the area, were walking across the field and saw the tree. It was a very hot, dry day and one of them said, "Let's stop under that tree, where there's some shade." "That's a very good idea," said his friend. They rested under the tree and drank some water. They then enjoyed the shade and the cool breeze. As they were **exhausted**, they soon fell asleep.

When they woke up, one of the travelers felt hungry. Neither of them had any food in their bags so they looked up at the branches of the tree. "This tree is useless," one of them said. "It has no food for us - there are no nuts or fruit on its branches." "But it has shade and it's keeping us cool," said the other.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1 The underlined word **exhausted** means very
a) happy b) tired c) glad d) similar
- 2 There are no nuts or fruit on the tree
a) roots b) branches c) trunk d) bark

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 Summarize the second paragraph.
- 4 Was the tree useless?

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحاً.

- 1 you - can't - I - help - your - with - homework - .
- 2 when - speak - Could - were - you - six - you - months old - ?
- 3 could - do - What - you - yesterday - ?

6 Write a paragraph of about (40) words.

اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

Trees

Guiding words:

(plant - useful - fruits - shade - shelter)



drinking
الشرب



shower
الاستحمام



washing
غسيل الملابس



swimming
السباحة



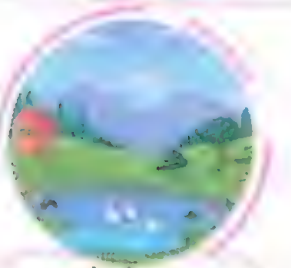
watering plants
سقي النباتات



washing a car
غسل السيارة



river
نهر



lake
بحيرة



snow
جليد



ice
ثلج



ocean
محيط



cloud
سحابة



rain
مطر



Extra Vocabulary

rainwater

مياه المطر

process

عملية

water vapor

بخار ماء

ice

ثلج

snow

جليد



Conjugation of verbs

بالزمن

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present

Past

Present

Past

change

يتغير

changed

warm

يدفئ

warmed

call

ينادي / يدعي

called

start

يبدأ

started

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

Past

Present

Past

become

يصبح

became

fall

يسقط

fell

rise

يرتفع

rose

come

يأتي

came

smell

يشم

smelt



Important expressions and prepositions

come from

يأتي من

fall from

يسقط من

go straight into

يذهب مباشرة إلى

a lot of

كثير من

is called

يسمى / يُدعى

stay on

يبقى على

high up

عاليًا

change into

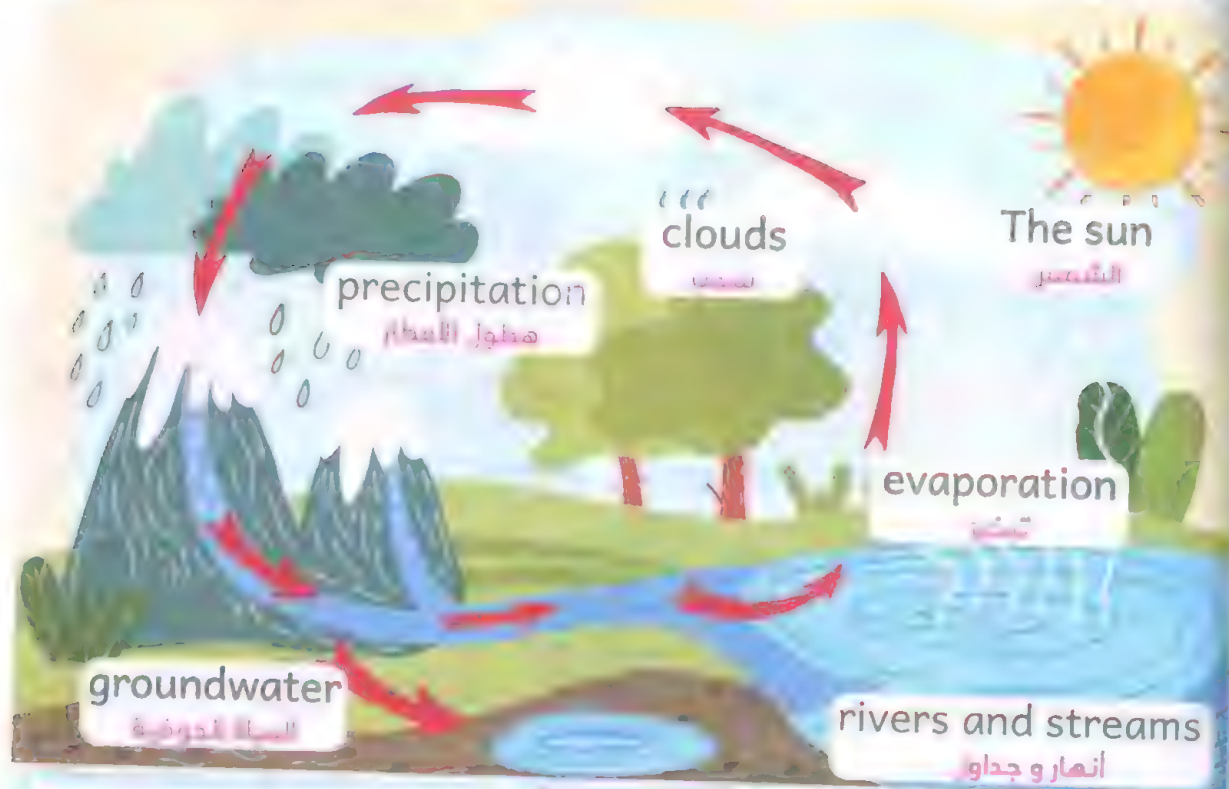
يتحول إلى

get heavier

يصبح أثقل

Read and listen.

اقرأ واستمع.



Where does our water come from?

Rain falls from clouds in the sky. Some rainwater goes straight into the ground. But a lot of it goes into streams, rivers, lakes, and then the ocean. This process is called precipitation.

Some of the rainwater changes - the sun warms it and it becomes water vapor. This process is called evaporation. We cannot see or smell the water vapor and it doesn't stay on the ground. It rises in the air and, as it gets cooler high up in the sky, it changes back into water and forms clouds. As the clouds become bigger, the water in them gets heavier. When the water in the clouds gets heavier, it falls to the ground, and the cycle starts again.

من أين يأتي الماء؟
المطر يسقط من السحب في السماء. بعض مياه المطر تسقط مباشرة إلى الأرض، لكن الكثير منها يسقط في الأنهار والبحيرات والبحار. هذه العملية تسمى "الهطول". لا يمكننا أن نرى أو نشم هذه الأبخرة، فكلما سُمِّتْ وتبخرت، فإنها ترتفع في الهواء. كلما ارتفعت، كلما أصبحت أكثر برودة. عندما تصبح أكثر برودة، تتحول إلى ماء وتكون السحب. كلما أصبحت السحب أكبر، كلما أصبح الماء فيها أثقل. عندما يصبح الماء في السحب أثقل، يسقط على الأرض. وتبدأ الدورة من جديد.



Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

- 1 Rain falls from clouds in the sky. ☐
 - 2 Some rainwater doesn't go straight into the ground. ☐
 - 3 A lot of rain goes into streams, rivers, lakes and oceans. ☐
 - 4 This process is called evaporation. ☐
- اقرأ واملأ.

2 Read and match.

- | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 Where does water | a straight into ground. |
| 2 Rain falls from | b come from? |
| 3 Some of the rainwater | c the clouds in the sky. |
| 4 Some rainwater goes | d becomes water vapor. |
- 1-() 2-() 3-() 4-()

3 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 Rain falls from _____ in the sky.
a) houses b) clouds c) vapor d) steam
- 2 The sun warms rainwater and it becomes water _____.
a) process b) vapor c) evaporation d) cloud
- 3 We can't see or _____ water vapor.
a) hear b) smell c) play d) talk

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحاً.

- 1 falls - clouds - Rain in - from sky - the .
- 2 does water - Where from come - ?
- 3 clouds - water - The from falls - .

Listen and say.

استمع وقل.



nobles



pharaoh
فرعون



soldier
جندي



traders
التجار



Ancient Egyptian
society
المجتمع المصري القديم



scribe
كاتب



artisan
حرف



farmers
المزارعون - الفلاحون

Extra Vocabulary

different	مختلف	the army	الجيش	important	مهم / هام
papyrus	نبط	role	دور / وظيفة	records	سجلات
society	مجتمع	jewelry	مجوهرات	goods	سلع
uniform	لباس موحد	materials	مواد الخام	chariots	عربات

Definitions

pharaoh	He ruled the country.	فرعون
nobles	They kept Ancient Egyptians safe.	النبلاء
scribes	They wrote everything for the people.	الكاتب
traders	They bought and sold all the goods.	التجار
farmers	They grew the food for everyone.	الفلاحون
artisan	Someone who makes things with their hands.	الحرفي

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

Irregular verbs

need	يحتاج	need	احتاج	know	يعلم	knew	يعلم
work	يعمل	work	عمل	grow	ينمو / يزرع / يربو	grew	زرع / يزرع
organize	ينظم	organized	نظم	keep	يحفظ	kept	حفظ
guard	يحرس	guarded	حرس	sell	يبيع	sold	باع
train	يتدرب	trained	تدرب	write	يكتب	wrote	كتب
produce	ينتج	produced	نتج	buy	يشترى	bought	اشتري
rule	يحكم	ruled	حكم				

Important expressions and prepositions

play important roles	يلعب أدوار هامة	in charge	المسؤول
work with	يعمل مع	look after	يعتني بـ
collect taxes	يجمع ضريبة	organize soldiers	ينظم الجنود
keep ... safe	يحفظ ... بأمان	guard the kingdom	يحرس المملكة
train for ...	يتدرب لـ	write on papyrus	يكتب على النبط
take ... from	يأخذ من	pick out	يختار / يميز

Read and listen.

اقرأ واستمع.

Lots of different people played important roles in Ancient Egyptian society. The person **in charge** was the pharaoh. The pharaoh needed lots of people to help him. He worked closely with **nobles**, and they looked after different things. The nobles collected **taxes** and organized soldiers.

لعب الكثير من الأشخاص المختلفين أدوارًا مهمة في المجتمع المصري القديم. كان الشخص المسئول هو الفراعنة. وكان الفرعون يحتاج إلى الكثير من الأشخاص ليساعده. لقد عمل مع النبلاء، وكانوا يعتنون بالأمور المختلفة. كان النبلاء يجمعون الضرائب وينظمون الجنود.

Soldiers were busy keeping Egypt safe. As Egypt was such an important and very rich country, the soldiers **guarded** the kingdom. **The army** was strong, and the soldiers were good at their jobs.

كان الجنود مشغولين بالحفاظ على أمن مصر. ولأن مصر كانت دولة مهمة وغنية جدًا، كان الجنود يحرسون المملكة. كان الجيش قويًا وكان الجنود جيدين في وظائفهم.

Scribes were very important because they were usually the only people who could read and write. They trained for about 12 years before they wrote on papyrus. They wrote many different things like **letters**, **records**, and important papers. Without the scribes, we would know almost nothing about Ancient Egypt today.

كان الكتبة مهمين للغاية لأنهم كانوا عادةً الأشخاص القلائق القادرين على القراءة والكتابة. كانوا يتدربون لمدة 12 عامًا قبل أن يكتبوا على البوص. كانوا يكتبون أشياء كثيرة مثل الرسائل، والسجلات، والورق الهام. بدون الكتبة، لن نعرف شيئًا عن مصر القديمة اليوم.

Traders were the people who bought and sold everything in Ancient Egyptian society - food, clothes, jewelry, soldiers' uniforms, ships, and materials for building.

التجار هم الأشخاص الذين يشترون ويبيعون كل شيء في المجتمع المصري القديم: الطعام، والملابس، والمجوهرات، والزي الرسمي للجنود، والسفن، والمواد الخام المستخدمة في البناء.

Artisans took the materials from the traders and made them into things for people to use, like furniture, **chariots**, and clothes.

الحرفيون أخذوا المواد من التجار وصنعوا منها أشياء للاستخدام، مثل الأثاث، والعربات، والملابس.

Farmers produced the food that was eaten by the pharaoh, the nobles, the soldiers, the scribes, the traders, and the artisans.

كان المزارعون ينتجون الطعام الذي يأكله الفرعون والنبلاء والجنود والكتبة والتجار والحرفيون.



Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

- 1 The person in charge was not the Pharaoh.
- 2 The Pharaoh needed lots of people to help him.
- 3 The Pharaoh didn't work closely with nobles.
- 4 The nobles collected taxes and organized soldiers.

استمع وأكمل.

2 Listen and complete.

- 1 _____ were busy keeping Egypt safe.
- 2 Egypt was such an important and very _____ country.
- 3 The soldiers _____ the kingdom.
- 4 The _____ was strong and the soldiers were good at their jobs.

اقرأ واملأ.

3 Read and match.

- | | |
|------------|---|
| a Pharaoh | g They grew the food for everyone. |
| b Soldiers | h He ruled the country. |
| c Scribes | i They wrote everything for the people. |
| d Traders | j They kept Ancient Egyptians safe. |
| e Farmers | k They bought and sold all the goods. |

1-() 2-() 3-() 4-() 5-()

4 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 The pharaoh worked with
a) farmers b) traders c) nobles d) scribes
- 2 The nobles collected and organized soldiers.
a) taxes b) boxes c) faxes d) books
- 3 The was the person in charge.
a) pharaoh b) soldier c) scribe d) farmer
- 4 bought and sold all the goods.
a) Soldiers b) Traders c) Farmers d) Scribes
- 5 I would like to be a because I like writing.
a) scribe b) pharaoh c) trader d) farmer
- 6 were busy keeping Egypt safe.
a) Scribes b) Farmers c) Soldiers d) Artisans

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات للكوّن جملاً صحيحة.

1 were - busy - Soldiers - safe - Egypt - keeping - .

2 were - scribes - Why - important - very - ?

3 was - person The - the pharaoh charge - in .

4 would like Why - you be to a scribe ?

6 Write a paragraph of about (40) words.

اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

A job you liked in Ancient Egypt

Guiding words:

1- What's the job?

2- Why do you like it?

3- What work does the person do?

Lesson (4)

THIS IS SO INTERESTING!

Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.



teacher

معلم



reader

قارئ



climber

متسلق



footballer

لاعب كرة قدم



farmer

مزارع



traveler

مسافر

Language Focus (1)

We add the suffix "er" to the end of words to make a noun.

نضيف اللاحقة "er" إلى نهاية بعض الكلمات لتكون أسم.

teach → teacher write → writer farm → farmer

Complete the sentences with words from the box.

(reader - traveler - footballer)

1 My grandfather was a great He traveled to many great places around the world.

2 A famous Egyptian in England is Mohamed Elneny - he plays for Arsenal.

3 My cousin is a very good He reads about 20 books a year.

Help your child learn and use the suffix "er".

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم ويستخدم اللاحقة "er".

Language Focus (2)

We add (ed or ing) to a verb to make an adjective. If the verb ends in -e, we take off the -e and add (ed or -ing).

ing ed
eg. English was interesting! - He is so excited.

The film is exciting. - I'm very interested in history.

Note:

(ed) adjectives describe how you feel.

الصفات المنتهية بـ "ed" تصف كيف تشعر (وصف الشخص أو من وقع عليه الحدث).

(ing) adjectives describe what the thing was like.

الصفات المنتهية بـ "ing" تصف ما كان الشيء (وصف الشيء الذي من به الحدث).

✓ Add -ed and -ing to the verbs to make adjectives.

- annoy
- amaze
- interest

Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

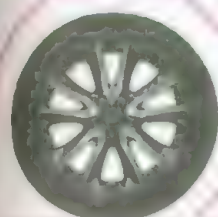
اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 I'm _____ in history.
a) interesting b) exciting c) interested d) boring
- 2 History is _____. I like it.
a) interested b) interesting c) boring d) excited
- 3 The film was so _____.
a) bored b) boring c) excited d) interested
- 4 He was _____ by his cruel words.
a) annoy b) annoying c) annoyed d) boring
- 5 He worked all day. He was _____.
a) tired b) excited c) bored d) tiring

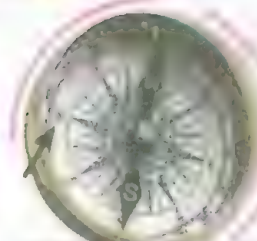
PRONUNCIATION

Listen and repeat.

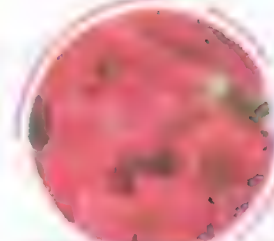
استمع وردد.



wheel



west



watermelon



wet



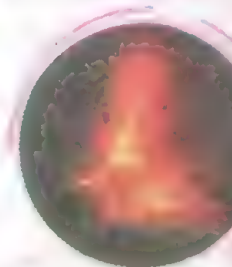
vet



violin



vest



volcano

Language Focus

/v/ and /w/ are both voiced sounds. This means that if you place your hand on your throat. You can feel the vibration when you say them.

الصوت /v/ و /w/ هما أصوات مسموعة. هذا يعني أنه إذا وضعت يديك على عنقك يمكنك أن تشعر بالاهتزاز عندما تقولهما.

To pronounce /v/, press your top teeth against your bottom lip.

لتلفظ الصوت /v/، اضغط أسنانتك العليا على شفتيك السفلى.

vet

vase

violin

volcano

To pronounce /w/, make a tight circle with your lips.

لتلفظ الصوت /w/، اجعل شفتيك في دائرة مغلقة.

winter

wet

whale

water

Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. ستمع واكتب (ت) صح أو (ف) خطأ.

- 1 Mohamed El Neny is a basketball player.
- 2 Mohamed El Neny is a footballer in England.
- 3 He plays for Arsenal.
- 4 Mohamed El Neny is Italian.

2 Read and match. اقرأ وامل.

- | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1 My grandfather was | a is Mrs Salwa. |
| 2 Mohamed El Neny is | b a great traveler. |
| 3 The film was boring | c a famous Egyptian footballer. |
| 4 My favorite teacher | d so I was bored. |

1- () 2- () 3- () 4- ()

3 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 My uncle is a professional climber. He goes up very high mountains.

a) teacher b) traveler c) reader d) climber

- 2 That long walk was very tiring.

a) tired b) bored c) tiring d) excited

- 3 Mr Mahmoud is an excellent farmer. He plants the best tomatoes in town.

a) teacher b) farmer c) reader d) climber

- 4 The film was interesting. I enjoyed it.

a) interesting b) interested c) bored d) excited

- 5 The match was exciting so Ali was excited.

a) interesting b) boring c) excited d) amazing

4 Read the following text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Last Wednesday I decided to travel west in my boat wearing my vest. I was looking for a volcano but I had some problems. I met some whales and they turned over my boat. I had to sit on my violin to stay afloat! I ate watermelon to stay healthy and I came to shore. I didn't find the volcano, but I met some vets and they took me home to my village!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1 The underlined word "vets" means a doctor for animals.

a) women b) men c) children d) animals

- 2 The writer was looking for a volcano.

a) tornado b) volcano c) cave d) tent

B) Answer the following questions.

- 1 What animals did the writer meet?

- 2 What did the writer have to do?

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences. أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

- 1 kind very Miss Salwa and is friendly classroom in the school.

- 2 movie - was That - boring - so it.

- 3 looking were What for you?

- 4 the match Was - boring - exciting or?

6 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- 1 Mohamed El Neny plays for arsenal

- 2 can you say vase quickly

- WRITING - PROJECT



dugong	حيوان الأطوم	sea bed	قاع البحر
nickname	اسم مستعار (كنية)	unusual	غير عادي
sea cow	حمار البحر	informal language	لغة غير رسمية
See you soon!	أراك قريباً	How are things?	كيف الأحوال؟
just a quick note	مجرد ملاحظة سريعة	All the best	تمنى لك كل خير



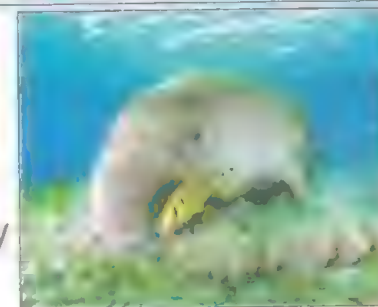
Writing an email

- 1- Begin your email with Dear or Hi and the person's name.
بدا بريدك الإلكتروني بـ Dear أو Hi واسم الشخص.
- 2- Say why you are writing. Use phrases like Just a quick note and Thanks for writing to me.
قل لماذا تكتب. استخدم عبارات مثل (مجرد ملاحظة سريعة. وشكراً على مراسلتي).
- 3- Give one idea in a paragraph and expand on it - look how Amir mentions the dugong, then describes it.
اعط فكرة واحدة في الفقرة وتوسع فيها. انظر كيف يذكر أمير حيوان الأطوم ثم يصفه.
- 4- When writing to a friend, you can use informal language, e.g. words like awesome and cool, contractions like I'm, and phrases like How's life? and How are things?
عند الكتابة لصديق، يمكنك استخدام لغة غير رسمية. على سبيل المثال، كلمات مثل "رائع وجميل"، واختصارات مثل "I'm". وعبارات مثل "كيف هي الدنيا؟ وكيف تسير الأمور؟"
- 5- End your email with phrases like Write soon, Hope to hear from you soon, See you soon, All the best, or Bye for now, and then your name.
انتهِ رسالتك الإلكترونية بعبارات مثل "اكتب قريباً. أتمنى أن أسمع منك قريباً. أراك قريباً. أتمنى لك التوفيق، أو إلى اللقاء الآن". ثم اكتب اسمك.

From :	Amir
To :	Tamer
Subject :	Unusual animals

Dear Tamer,

Thanks for your email. How are things?
It was really interesting to hear about the sports you like. I love basketball, and I play on a team once a week.



عزيزي تامر.

شكراً على رسالة البريد الإلكتروني. كيف الأحوال؟ كان من الممتع حقاً أن أسمع عن الرياضات التي تحبها. أنا أحب كرة السلة، وألعب في فريق مرة واحدة في الأسبوع.

This week we're talking a lot about unusual animals at school. We looked at animals from around the world and some from Egypt. My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the dugong - can you see the photo? I think it's got a lovely friendly face and it's very cute! Its nickname is the sea cow and it spends many hours eating grass from the sea bed every day.

نتحدث هذا الأسبوع كثيراً عن الحيوانات غير العادية في المدرسة. نظرنا إلى حيوانات من جميع أنحاء العالم وبعضها من مصر. الحيوان غير المعتاد المفضل لدي من مصر هو حيوان الأطوم، هل يمكنك رؤية الصورة؟ أعتقد أنه يا تامر تهتم بهؤلاء الحيوانات. أعتقد أنها لطيفة جداً ولها وجه جميل. أعتقد أنها تأكل العشب من قاع البحر كل يوم.

What about you? What's your favorite unusual animal?
Write back and let me know.

Hope to hear from you soon!

Amir

وماذا عنك؟ ما هو الحيوان غير العادي المفضل لديك؟ اكتب وأعلمني.

أتمنى أن أسمع منك قريباً.

أمير

Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

- 1 Amir and Tarek are talking about birds. ☐
- 2 Amir says that dugongs are also called sea cows. ☐
- 3 Amir sends a photo to Tamer. ☐
- 4 Dugong is an animal from Egypt. ☐

2 Read and match.

- | | |
|----------------|-----------|
| 1 See you | a best. |
| 2 How are | b note. |
| 3 Just a quick | c soon! |
| 4 All the | d things? |

1-() 2-() 3-() 4-()

3 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1 My favorite _____ from Egypt is the dugong.

- a) bird b) animal c) thing d) item

2 The dugong's _____ is sea cow.

- a) surname b) name c) nickname d) full name

3 The dugong spends many hours eating grass from sea _____.

- a) bag b) bed c) chair d) table

4 Begin your email with _____.

- a) Deer b) Dear c) Bye d) See you

5 End your email with "Write _____".

- a) soon b) noon c) phone d) late

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة.

1 favorite - your - What's - animal - unusual - ?

2 from - hear - to - I - you - hope - soon - .

3 for - your - Thanks - email - .

4 your - email - Begin - "Dear" - with - .

5 Write an email of (40) words to your friend Mazen telling him about your favorite zoo animal, your name is Hanza.

اكتب بريداً إلكترونياً.

- 1 Write about your favorite animal.
- 2 What the animal looks like.
- 3 Where it lives and what it eats.
- 4 Ask your friend about his opinion.

From _____

To _____

Subject: _____

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

1 Mazen sent an email to hanin

2 what's your favorite animal

Review on Unit (9)

Animals and birds

kangaroo	كنغر	bat	خفاش	penguin	قطر البطريق
panda	باندا	lion	أسد	dolphin	دولفين
snail	سلحفاة	parrot	ببغاء		

Trees

trunk	جذع / ساق	save	يُحفظ	branch	فرع
nuts	مكسرات	shelter	مأوى	breeze	نسيم
rest	راحة	exhausted	متعب	useless	عديم الفائدة
ungrateful	خاسر / لا يقدّر	comfortable	مريح		

Ancient Egypt

Pharaohs	فراعنة	scribes	كتبة	soldiers	الجنود
traders	التجار	farmers	الفلاحون	artisans	الحرفيين
nobles	أشراف	taxes	الضرائب		

Phonics

Voiced sounds

vet	violin	west	wet
volcano	vest	whale	watermelon

Language

- She **could** speak English.
- I **can** play tennis.
- I'm very **interested** in history.
- History is so **interesting**.

Writing Corner!

Write a paragraph of about (40) words. اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

"Your favorite animal"

My favorite animal is the lion. It's a very strong animal. It lives in the wild. It eats meat. It is the strongest animal. It can hunt its prey easily and quickly. It is wild and fierce. It's kept in iron cages so as not to harm anyone. It's the king of the forest. The lion has strong claws and sharp teeth which help it hunt its prey and eat it.

"A visit to the wildlife park"

Yesterday Ramez went to a wildlife park with his family. He enjoyed it very much. They saw lots of different animals like lions, kangaroos, and penguins. He saw his favorite birds, the parrots. He was a bit sad because he didn't see the bats and he's doing a project on them at school.

"Trees"

Trees are the best gift of nature for us. They make the environment beautiful and clean. Water and sunlight are very important to help trees grow. Human beings get food from trees. They give us wood and shade. Houses, chairs and toys are made from wood that we receive from trees. They produce oxygen. They give us fruits and flowers.

Dictation on Unit (9)

Lesson (1)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	كنغر		طائر البطريق
	ذب الباندا		دولفين
	خفاش		حبارون
	غابة مطيرة		كيس / جراب الكنغر

Lesson (2)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	جفع		مكسرات
	فروع		عديم الفائدة
	مأوى		جاذب / ناكز الجميل
	راحة		مريح
	متعب		نسيم

Lesson (3)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	هطول الأمطار		بحرس
	التبخير		سجلات
	مسنول		تجار
	النبلاء		حرفيين
	الجنود		فرعون
	عربات		كتبة

Lesson (4)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	متضيق		مأكل
	شيق		متفاجئ
	محترف		بركان

Lesson (5)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	لقب		محيط
	حيوان الأطوم		غابة
	طبيب بيطري		عجلة

Activities on Unit (9)

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ

Scribes were not very important in Ancient Egypt. ☐

Scribes could read and write. ☐

They trained for about 12 years before they wrote on papyrus. ☐

Scribes didn't write letters or records. ☐

2 Listen and complete. استمع واكمل

Dolphins are

Pandas live in

Pandas eat

Pandas are

3 Read and match. اقرأ وصل

1 Trees give us

a ruled the county.

2 A breeze is

b clouds in the sky.

3 Rain falls from

c a little wind.

4 A pharaoh

d shade and shelter.

1-()

2-()

3-()

4-()

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

1 you - swim - Could - you - were - when - five ?

- us give Trees and shelter shade .
- is point A meeting somewhere meet to .
- from - does - Where - water - come - ?

5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Every week. I go to the park. I always go there on Fridays. My father usually drives me there. My mother and my two sisters often go with us. We always sit under a tree to protect us from the sun. We never leave the park dirty.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1 I go to the park by
a) bus b) train c) plane d) car
- 2 I always go to the park on
a) Mondays b) Saturdays c) Fridays d) Sundays

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 Who often go with you?
- 4 Where do you always sit?

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

Mazen likes english and Arabic

Where does hanin come from

7 Write a paragraph of about (40) words.

اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

My favorite player

Guiding words:

Mohamed El Neny - Arsenal - Egyptian - score - want - like - best

Activities on Units (7 - 9)

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) false. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

- 1 The Egyptian tortoise is one of the biggest tortoises in the world. ☐
- 2 The Egyptian tortoise lives in desert areas of Egypt and Italy. ☐
- 3 The Egyptian habitat has been destroyed. ☐
- 4 People take the tortoises from the wild to keep as pets. ☐

2 Listen and complete. استمع وأكمل.

- 1 Dorcas gazelles live in the and Negev deserts.
- 2 Dorcas gazelles are They only eat leaves and plants.
- 3 Dorcas gazelles are nearly
- 4 People are using their habitat for and building.

3 Read and match. اقرأ ووصل.

- | | |
|--------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1 How long did you | a the most popular? |
| 2 Which food is | b the kingdom in Ancient Egypt. |
| 3 Soldiers guarded | c live in your old apartment? |
| 4 I cut my | d knee last week. |

1- () 2- () 3- () 4- ()

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Lots of different people played important roles in Ancient Egyptian society. The person in charge was the pharaoh. The pharaoh needed lots of people to help him. He worked closely with nobles, and they looked after different things. The nobles collected taxes and organized soldiers.

Soldiers were busy keeping Egypt safe. As Egypt was such an important and very rich country, the soldiers guarded the kingdom. The army was strong, and the soldiers were good at their jobs.

Scribes were very important because they were usually the only people who could read and write. They trained for about 12 years before they wrote on papyrus. They wrote many different things like letters, records, and important papers. Without the scribes, we would know almost nothing about Ancient Egypt today.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1 The underlined word "in charge" means
 a) possible b) probable c) responsible d) usual
- 2 The _____ collected taxes and organized soldiers.
 a) scribes b) nobles c) artisans d) farmers

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 Why were scribes very important?
- 4 What were soldiers busy doing?

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة.

- 1 did - What - to - use - they - build - homes - ?
- 2 biggest - is - The - the - elephant - world - animal - in - the
- 3 do - do - What - you - stay - healthy - to - ?
- 4 like - would - I - be - to - a scribe - .

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- 1 mazen could read and write when he was seven
- 2 mona didn't eat her dinner

7 Write a paragraph of about (40) words.

اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

"My perfect room"

Guiding words:

bedroom - share - desk - armchair - closet - posters

Non-Fiction Reader

Read and listen.

اقرأ واستمع.

ENDANGERED ANIMALS IN EGYPT.

الحيوانات المهددة بالانقراض في مصر

If an animal is endangered, it means that it could become extinct. Animals can become endangered for several reasons including loss of habitat, pollution, and poaching. It's our responsibility to protect all wild animals because we share the Earth with them! Our actions shouldn't hurt wild animals or their habitats. In Egypt, around 70 species of animals are endangered. Let's look at two of them:

إذا تعرض حيوان ما لخطر، فهذا يعني أنه يمكن أن ينقرض. يمكن أن تصبح الحيوانات مهددة بالانقراض بسبب أسباب بما في ذلك فقدان المواطن والتلوث والصيد الجائر. وتقع على عاتقنا مسؤولية حماية جميع الحيوانات البرية لأننا نشترك الأرض معهم! يجب ألا تؤدي أفعالنا الحيوانات البرية أو موطنها. ويوجد في مصر حوالي 70 نوعاً من الحيوانات المعرضة للخطر. هيا ننظر إلى اثنين منهم.

Egyptian tortoise

Facts

Population: 7,470

Can live up to: 50 years

Length: 14.4 cm

Weight: 160-350 g

Top speed: up to 8 kms per hour

Diet: plants and leaves



Help your child read about endangered animals.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن الحيوانات المهددة بالانقراض.

Non-Fiction Reader

Dorcas gazelle

Facts

Population: 1,000-2,000

Can live up to: 15 years

Length: 90-100 cm

Weight: 15-20 kg

Top speed: up to 96 kms per hour

Diet: plants and leaves



The Egyptian tortoise is one of the smallest tortoises in the world. It lives in the desert areas of Egypt and Libya. However, the Egyptian tortoise is now endangered. This is because its habitat has been destroyed, but also because people take them from the wild to keep as pets.

Dorcas gazelles live in the Sahara and Negev deserts. They are herbivores - this means they only eat leaves and plants. Dorcas gazelles are nearly extinct for two main reasons: firstly, people hunt them for their meat and skin. Secondly, more and more people are using their habitat for farming and building.

تعتبر السلحفاة المصرية من أصغر السلحفاة في العالم وتعيش في المناطق الصحراوية في مصر وليبيا ومع ذلك، فإن السلحفاة المصرية مهددة بالانقراض الآن وهذا بسبب تدمير موطنها، ولكن أيضاً لأن الناس يأخذونها من البرية للاحتفاظ بها كحيوانات أليفة.

تعيش غزلان الدوركاس في الصحراء الكبرى ومخاريب النقب وهي من الحيوانات آكلة الأعشاب وهذا يعني أنهم يأكلون فقط أوراق الشجر والنباتات وتستخدم غزلان الدوركاس تقريبا منقرضة لسببين رئيسيين، أولاً، يصادونها الناس من أجل لحومها وجلدها وثانياً، يستخدم المزيد والعديد من الناس موطنها للزراعة والبناء.

Help your child read about endangered animals.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن الحيوانات المهددة بالانقراض.

Al-BAHER - Connect 131



Theme (4) Being responsible

Unit 10

Let's visit Egypt

100 101 102



In this unit the student will...

- listen, read, research, and write about places in a town.
- practice using the imperative to tell someone to do or not to do something.
- practice using questions and short answers.
- read and say words with diphthongs
- estimate with mental math.
- write a paragraph about his town
- make a poster about his perfect town.

Lesson (1)

WE LOVE ALEXANDRIA

Listen and say.

Places in the town

أماكن في المدينة



bank

بنك



factory

مصنع



monument

نصب تذكاري / تمثال



library

مكتبة



shopping mall

مركز تجاري



square

ساحة



station

محطة



museum

متحف



restaurant

مطعم



market

سوق



beach

شاطئ



hotel

فندق

Lesson (1)

Extra Vocabulary

roof garden	حديقة بالسطح	cuisine	طبخ / مطبخ	tourists	سياح
culture	ثقافة	originally	أصلًا	mint	نعناع
traditional	تقليدي	mix	خليط / مزيج	England	انجلترا
ingredients	مكونات / مقادير	Barcelona	برشلونة	Germany	ألمانيا
supermarket	سوبر ماركت	fresh	طازج	Cairo	القاهرة
traditions	تقاليد	store	متجر		

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
own يمتلك	owned	think يعتقد	thought
chat يردش	chatted	buy يشتري	bought
serve يقدم	served	spend يقضي	spent
remind يذكر	reminded	think يعتقد	thought
borrow يستعير	borrowed	swim يسبح	swam

Important expressions and prepositions

on vacation	في إجازة	spend ages	يقضي فترات طويلة
reminds me of	تذكرني بـ	walk around	يتجول حول
find out about	يكتشف (يعرف)	show... around	يأخذ... في جولة
all my life	طوال حياتي	by train	بالقطار
originally from	في الأصل من	move to	ينتقل إلى
at the market	في السوق	chat to	يردش مع
go on school trip	يذهب في رحلة مدرسية	work in	يعمل في
mix of	خليط من	buy from	يشتري من

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Who is from Alexandria?

Why we love Alexandria!

Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit.

There's a lot to see and do here!

It's a big city with lots of amazing restaurants, stores, markets, and museums. There's even a beach!

We asked some people who live there and tourists what they think ...



لماذا نحب الإسكندرية!

الإسكندرية مكان مثير جداً للزيارة. هناك الكثير لرؤيته والقيام به هنا! إنها مدينة كبيرة وبها الكثير من المطاعم والمناجر والأسواق والمتاحف الرائعة. وهناك شاطئ! سألنا بعض الأشخاص الذين يعيشون هناك والسياح عن رأيهم...

I'm visiting Alexandria from Germany. I think it's really cool here. I think there are some good museums, but I haven't been to any yet. I love just sitting in the roof garden of my hotel, drinking sweet Egyptian mint tea and chatting to other people. It's very relaxing.

حل: أنا أזור الإسكندرية من ألمانيا. أعتقد أن المكان هنا رائع جداً. أعلم أن هناك بعض المتاحف الجيدة، لكنني لم أزرها بعد. أحب مجرد الجلوس في حديقة سطح فندقي. وشرب شاي بالنعناع المصري الحلو والحدشة مع الآخرين. إنه أمر مريح للغاية.

Hanan I've lived in Alexandria all my life. I own a restaurant here so I have to say that you must visit my restaurant to try some of the local cuisine. We serve traditional Egyptian food using lovely fresh local ingredients. We have excellent supermarkets, but I prefer to buy my ingredients at the market in the old town.

حنا: لقد عشت في الإسكندرية طوال حياتي. أنا أملك مطعمًا هنا لذا يجب أن أقول إنه يجب عليك زيارة مطعمي لتجرب بعض المأكولات المحلية. نحن نقدم الطعام المصري التقليدي باستخدام مكونات محلية طازجة جميلة. لدينا محلات سوبر ماركت ممتازة، لكنني أفضل أن أشتري مستلزماتي من السوق في المدينة القديمة.

Kira and Lena We're from a small town in England. The stores aren't very good there.

That's what we love most about Alexandria - the shopping malls! We spend ages walking around them. We like the people. They are so friendly!

كيرا ولينا: نحن من مدينة صغيرة في إنجلترا. المتاجر ليست جيدة هناك. وهذا أكثر ما نحب في الإسكندرية - مراكز التسوق! نقضي ساعات طويلة في التحول حولهم. نحن نحب الناس. إنهم ودودون للغاية!

Karim I'm Egyptian, originally from Cairo. I moved to Alexandria last year and I love it here. I work in a bank. My favorite place is the beach - there isn't one in Cairo! It can get very hot here in summer, so it's great to go there and swim.

كريم: أنا مصري. في الأصل من القاهرة انتقلت إلى الإسكندرية العام الماضي. هنا أنا أعمل في بنك. المكان المفضل لدي هو الشاطئ. - حيث أنه لا يوجد شاطئ في القاهرة يمكن أن يكون الجو حارًا جدًا هنا في الصيف، لذلك من الرائع الذهاب إلى هناك والسباحة فيه.

Paulo I'm on vacation here from Barcelona. I like Alexandria because it reminds me of home - a big, modern city near the sea. I love the mix of modern and old buildings.

Also, I like to find out about the culture and traditions. The library is amazing!

باولو أنا في إجازة هنا من برشلونة أحب الإسكندرية لأنها تذكرني بموطني - مدينة كبيرة قريبة من البحر. أحب الميخ بين المباني الحديثة والتقليدية وأيضًا أحب التعرف على الثقافة والتقاليد المختلفة.

Listen again. Circle the correct word.

- 1 Jens likes drinking tea in the (museum - hotel).
- 2 Hanan buys her ingredients from the (supermarket - market).
- 3 Kira and Lena like (shopping - swimming) in Alexandria.
- 4 Karim lives in (Cairo - Alexandria).
- 5 Paulo likes Alexandria because it is like (Cairo - Barcelona).

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Sara

I'm going to visit my aunt and uncle. We're going by train.

سوف أذهب لزيارة عمي وعمتي. سوف نذهب بالقطار.

Ahmed

My cousin is visiting us and we're going to show him around. He's never seen the pyramids.

سوف يزورنا ابن عمي. وسوف نأخذه في جولة. فهو لم يرى الأهرامات من قبل.

Lina

We went on a school trip to find out how cotton is turned into clothes like T-shirts and dresses.

ذهبنا في رحلة مدرسية لتكتشف كيف يتم تحويل القطن إلى ملابس مثل التيشيرتات والفساتين.

Youssef

I want to borrow some books.

أريد استعارة بعض الكتب.

Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

- 1 Alexandria is an exciting place to visit.
- 2 It isn't a big city.
- 3 There's a lot to see and do here.
- 4 There isn't a beach here.

☐
☐
☐
☐

2 Listen and complete.

استمع واكمل.

- 1 Anas has _____ places in his town.
- 2 Anas has a _____ in his town.
- 3 The shopping mall is _____.
- 4 Anas buys his _____ from this mall.

3 Read and match.

اقرأ وامل.

- 1 Jens likes drinking _____ a) from the market.
 - 2 Hanan buys her ingredients _____ b) is the beach.
 - 3 I like to find out _____ c) tea in the hotel.
 - 4 My favorite place _____ d) about culture and traditions.
- 1- () 2- () 3- () 4- ()

4 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 We have dinner at the _____.
- a) bank b) restaurant c) hospital d) museum
- 2 I go to the _____ in summer and enjoy swimming.
- a) beach b) museum c) library d) factory
- 3 We borrow books from the _____.
- a) mall b) bank c) park d) library

- 1 My dad works in a _____ where cotton is turned into clothes.
- a) station b) factory c) school d) post office

- 2 We catch the train at the _____.
- a) station b) factory c) library d) shopping mall

- 3 I like drinking sweet Egyptian _____ tea.
- a) milk b) mint c) hint d) faint

- 4 I'm Egyptian, _____ from Cairo.
- a) original b) originality c) originally d) originate

- 5 I'm _____ vacation here from Barcelona.
- a) in b) on c) at d) by

5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Hanan has lived in Alexandria all her life. She owns a restaurant here so she has to say that you must visit her restaurant to try some of the local cuisine. She serves traditional Egyptian food using lovely fresh local ingredients. Alexandria has excellent supermarkets, but she prefers to buy her ingredients at the market in the old town.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1 Hanan has lived in _____ all her life.
- a) Cairo b) Giza c) Alexandria d) Suez
- 2 You must visit her _____ to try the local cuisine.
- a) café b) restaurant c) club d) hotel

B) Answer the following questions.

- 1 Where does Hanan prefer to buy her ingredients?
- 2 What does Hanan serve in her restaurant?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

1 station - town - There's - my - a big - in - .

2 is - from - Who Alexandria - ?

3 borrow - I - books - to - want - some - .

4 Alexandria - last - moved - We - year - to - .

7 Write a paragraph of about (40) words.

اكتب فقرة من 40 كلمة.

"Alexandria"

Guiding words:

(exciting place - see and do - amazing - beach - restaurants
hotels)

8 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

there's also a library here

why we love Alexndria

Lesson
(2)

LET'S FIND OUT!

Listen and say.

استمع وقل.



monuments

أثار



artifacts

حرف يدوية



paintings

رسومات



hieroglyphics

الكتابة الهيروغليفية



tomb

مقبرة



water carriers

حاملات الماء

Definitions

evidence

facts that show something is true

دليل

monument

a building or statue

أثر

painting

a picture

لوحة/صورة

tomb

people were buried here when they died

مقبرة

artifacts

objects like vases and pots which were made in the past

حرف يدوية

hieroglyphics

a kind of writing using pictures and symbols

الكتابة الهيروغليفية

استمع واقرأ.

Listen and read.

How do we know so much about life in Ancient Egypt?

There is lots of evidence that tells us about life in Ancient Egypt. Evidence is facts or signs that show clearly that something exists or is true.

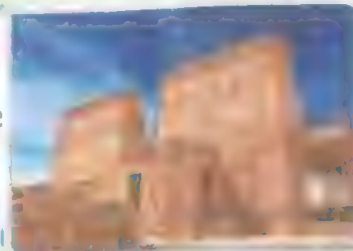
كيف نعرف الكثير عن الحياة في مصر القديمة؟

هناك الكثير من الأدلة تخبرنا عن الحياة في مصر القديمة. الدليل هو حقائق أو علامات تدل بوضوح على وجود شيء ما أو أنه صحيح.

We can learn about buildings from ancient monuments.

These are structures that were built to celebrate important people.

يمكننا التعرف على المباني من الآثار القديمة. هذه المباني بنيت للاحتفال بالأشخاص المهمين.



Paintings are on walls or on papyrus. They show scenes of daily life, such as farmers working in the fields, or special occasions, such as feasts and special events.

اللوحات على الجدران أو ورق البردي. وهي تعرض مشاهد من الحياة اليومية، مثل المزارعين وهم يعملون في الحقول، أو المناسبات الخاصة، مثل الأعياد والأحداث الخاصة.



Artifacts are things from daily life like vases and water carriers that tell us how people lived.

المصنوعات اليدوية هي أشياء من الحياة اليومية مثل الزهريرات وحاملات الماء التي تخبرنا كيف كان يعيش الناس.



Hieroglyphics are Ancient Egyptian writing symbols and pictures. From hieroglyphics we can get evidence about life in Ancient Egypt.

الكتابة الهيروغليفية رموز وصور الكتابة المصرية القديمة. من الكتابة الهيروغليفية يمكننا الحصول على أدلة عن الحياة في مصر القديمة.



Pharaohs and other important people were buried in beautiful tombs. These also had other things people thought they might need and information about their life.

تم دفن الفراعنة وغيرهم من الأشخاص المهمين في مقابر جميلة. وكانت تحتوي أيضًا على أشياء أخرى اعتقد الناس أنهم قد يحتاجون إليها ومعلومات عن حياتهم.



Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

papyrus	ورق البردي	scenes	مناظر	statue	نمثال
facts	حقائق	feasts	أعياد	objects	أشياء
signs	علامات/ إشارات	events	أحداث	pots	أواني
structures	مباني	symbols	رموز	pharaohs	فراعنة

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
exist	يوجد / existed	teach	يعلم / taught
celebrate	يحتفل / celebrated	build	يبني / built
bury	يدفن / buried	show	يوضح / showed

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

so much	كثيرًا جدًا	such as	مثل
daily life	الحياة اليومية	a kind of	نوع من
tell about	يخبر عن	learn about	يتعلم عن
buried in tombs	يدفن في مقابر	give information	يعطي معلومات
important people	ناس مهمين	special occasions	مناسبات خاصة

Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

- 1 Evidence is facts or signs, that show something is true.
- 2 We can't learn about buildings from ancient monuments.
- 3 Buildings are structures.
- 4 Buildings were built to celebrate unknown people.

2 Listen and complete. استمع وأكمل.

- 1 _____ and other important people were buried in tombs.
- 2 People were buried in _____ tombs.
- 3 The tombs had other _____ people might need.
- 4 The tombs had _____ about their life.

3 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 Monuments teach us about _____ in Ancient Egypt.
a) cars b) life c) evidence d) symbols
- 2 Monuments were built to _____ important people.
a) write b) read c) do d) celebrate
- 3 Paintings show special _____ in Ancient Egypt.
a) occasions b) lives c) birds d) ways
- 4 Important people were buried in _____.
a) caves b) tombs c) deserts d) forests
- 5 _____ are things from daily life like vases and water carriers.
a) Artifacts b) Signs c) Tombs d) Monuments
- 6 _____ are Ancient Egyptian writing symbols and pictures.
a) Paintings b) Hieroglyphics c) Letters d) Artifacts

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Read and match.

- | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1 Evidence is facts that | a in beautiful tombs. |
| 2 A monument is | b of picture. |
| 3 Pharaohs were buried | c show something is true. |
| 4 Artifacts are things | d from daily life like vases. |
| 5 A painting is a kind | e a building or statue. |

1-() 2-() 3-() 4-() 5-()

5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Ancient Egyptian people were very clever. They built structures to celebrate important people. They wrote about their life using hieroglyphics. They painted on walls or on papyrus. These paintings show scenes of daily life such as farmers working in the fields.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1 Ancient Egyptian people were very _____.
a) bad b) ugly c) stupid d) clever
- 2 They wrote about their life using _____.
a) hieroglyphics b) artifacts c) monuments d) tombs

B) Answer the following questions.

- 1 What do paintings show?
- 2 What does the underlined word "They" refer to?

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

1 are - What - hieroglyphics - ?2 walls - are or - Paintings on - papyrus - .3 Ancient - life How - in - Egypt - was - ?4 tell - people - us - Artifacts - how - lived - .

7 Write a paragraph of about (40) words.

اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

"Ancient Egypt"

Guiding words:

monuments - artifacts - paintings - hieroglyphics - tombs

8 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

pharaohs were buried in tombs

what are hieroglyphics

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (5)

DON'T RUN IN THE LIBRARY

Vocabulary

loudly

صوتاً مرتفعاً

trash can

سلة المهملات

inside

بالداخل

unimportant

غير مهم

quietly

بهدهوء

voice

صوت الإنسان

upstairs

الطابق العلوي

librarian

موظف المكتبة / أمين المكتبة

button

زر

environment

البيئة

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

Past

Present

Past

waste

يضيع

wasted

choose

يختار chose

wait

ينتظر

waited

bring

يحضّر brought

push

يدفع للأمام

pushed

lose

يفقد lost

return

يعود / يعيد

returned

wear

يرتدي wore

Important expressions and prepositions

go inside

يذهب للداخل

stand back

ابتعد عن الآخرين

Wait a moment.

انتظر لحظة

jump up and down

قفز لأعلى ولأسفل

go in (into)

يدخل

return to

يعود إلى

go upstairs

يذهب للطابق العلوي

bring back

أرجع

pick up

يلتقط

begin with

يبدأ بـ

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Imperative

أمر

Usage

- We use imperatives to tell someone to do or not to do something.

e.g. - Stand up.

e.g. - Don't run.

Form

- To make the affirmative imperatives use, the "infinitive" without "to".

e.g. - Open the door, please.

- Please, pick up that trash.

- Put the cake in the oven, please.

- To make negative imperatives use, "don't + infinitive" without "to".

e.g. - Don't eat in the library, please.

- Don't waste your time.

- 1 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

..... open the door. It's hot.

- a) Didn't b) Don't c) Doesn't d) Isn't

..... your room. It's dirty.

- a) Clean b) Cleans c) Cleaned d) Cleaning

..... eat in the library.

- a) Isn't b) Aren't c) Don't d) Can't

into the elevator.

- a) Goes b) Go c) Going d) Went

Don't up and down.

- a) jumping b) jumped c) jump d) jumps

Don't your time.

- a) waste b) wastes c) wasting d) wasted

..... the cake in the oven.

- a) Puts b) Put c) Putting d) Put to

..... up that trash.

- a) Pick b) Picks c) Picked d) Picking

Don't late tomorrow.

- a) is b) be c) are d) was

..... quietly in the library.

- a) Talk b) Talks c) Talking d) Talked

- 2 Rewrite the rules with imperatives.

أعد كتابة الآتي بصيغة الأمر.

You shouldn't talk loudly. Don't talk loudly.

You have to stand back.

You need to eat healthy food.

You can't be late.

You shouldn't make noise.

You should listen to me carefully.

Activities

1 Listen and complete.

ستمع وأكمل

- 1 The children are visiting Alexandria .
- 2 Reem says it's .
- 3 The teacher asks Reem to . a moment.
- 4 The teacher tells Ali not to .

2 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 . fruits and vegetables to stay healthy.
a) Eats b) Don't eat c) Eat d) Eating
- 2 . eat in the library.
a) Don't b) Doesn't c) Didn't d) Isn't
- 3 . your book back in two weeks.
a) Bringing b) Brings c) Bring d) Brought
- 4 Don't . your water inside.
a) drinks b) drink c) drinking d) drank
- 5 . use your mobile phone here.
a) Can't b) Aren't c) Don't d) Doesn't
- 6 Don't . your book.
a) lose b) loses c) losing d) lost

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة.

noise - Stop - and - making - to - me - listen - .

up - bus - Hurry - or miss - you'll - the - .

write - book - Don't - the - in - .

talk - Don't - loudly - .

4 Read and match.

اقرأ واصل.

- 1 Don't be unkind a) to your friends.
- 2 Study the lesson again b) miss the first lesson.
- 3 Don't come late or you will c) anyone your password.
- 4 Don't tell d) and do the exercise.

1- () 2- () 3- () 4- ()

5 Write a paragraph of about (40) words.

اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

"What should or shouldn't you do inside a park?"

Guiding words:

(environment - park - flowers - help - trash can)

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

= keep the environment clean

= don't write short sentences

Lesson
14

GABI LEARNS A LESSON

Vocabulary | كلمات

ibis	طيور ابو عجل	jerboa	حيوان السبع	enormous	محم
sacks	أكياس	rudely	بوحدة	land	أرض
creature	مخلوق	foolish	أحمق	far	بعيد

Conjugation of Verbs |

Present	Past	Continuous	Future		
recognize	يعترف على	recognized	fly	يطير	flew
entertain	يسلي	entertained	begin	يبدأ	began
apologize	يعتذر	apologized	sleep	ينام	slept
pretend	يتظاهر	pretended	offer	يعرض	offered

Important expressions and prepositions | تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

walk along	يمشي بطول	strange-looking	عابث الشكل
watch from	يراقب من	telling the truth	يقول الحقيقة
Listen and read.			استمع واقرأ.

Gabi Learns A lesson

جابي يتعلم درسا

One day, a villager wanted to sell his beans in the market, but he couldn't walk far. His camel, Gabi, said, "Give me the sacks of beans - I will take them to the market for you." Gabi walked along the road. He turned left and then right and then



left again. Soon, Gabi didn't recognize the road.

من أحد إلى آخر، لم يكن يستطيع المشي لمسافة بعيدة. قال حملة جابي: "عطاني أكياس البقول - سوف أذهب معك إلى السوق عن يدك - سار جابي على طول الطريق واتجه يساراً ثم يميناً ثم يساراً مرة أخرى وسار جابي على الطريق."

"Are you lost?" called an ibis. Gabi had never seen such a strange-looking bird.

"No, I'm not lost," pretended Gabi. Gabi didn't know that the ibis could fly high above the land and tell him the way. Gabi saw a snake, watching him from the branches of a tree. "You look lost," said the snake.

"No, I'm not," said Gabi - again he wasn't telling the truth. "Anyway, even if I was, you can't help - you haven't even got legs," he said unkindly. Gabi didn't know that the snake went to the market every day to entertain the crowds.

نادى عليه: "أنت ضال؟" - هل أنت ضال؟ - لم يرى جابي مثل هذا الطائر الغريب من قبل. نطاهر جابي وقال: "لا لست ضالاً. لم يكن جابي يعلم أن طائر أبو عجل يمكن أن يحلر عالياً فوق الأرض ويخبره بالطريق. رأى جابي ثعباناً يراقبه من أغصان شجرة. قال الثعبان: "بدو ضالاً". قال جابي: "لا. سبب ضلالي - أنت لم تكن تعلم أنني لم أكن أعرف أن الثعبان يذهب إلى السوق كل يوم لكي يسلي حشداً من الناس."

It began to get dark. Gabi saw a little animal on the road in front of him.

"What a funny-looking creature. Look at those enormous ears," he thought to himself.

"Hello," said the jerboa. "Do you need any help?"

"No, I don't!" replied Gabi rudely. Gabi didn't know that the jerboa could hear the sounds of the market traders.

"OK, good night then," called the jerboa.

Soon, it was completely dark and Gabi understood he needed the animals' help. He knew he was foolish and he was sorry. He decided to go to sleep, and to apologize and ask for their help the next day.

Lesson (4 / B)

PRONUNCIATION

Tip! "Homophones"

Some words have the same sounds but they are different in spelling and meaning.

بعض الكلمات لها نفس النطق ولكنها تختلف في المعنى والهجاء.

eight → ate right → write wear → were

Listen and Learn.

استمع وتعلم.

go	يذهب	bite	بعض	boy	ولد	make	يعمل
show	يعرض	right	صواب	toy	لعبة	play	يلعب
grow	يراع	write	يكتب	enjoy	يستمتع	cake	كعك
wrote	كتب	time	وقت	point	يسير	bake	يخبز

Study the following sentences:

- I have a bad toothache.
- Look! There are eight trees in the garden.
- Let's bake a cake for my birthday!
- Does the farmer grow vegetables?

AL-BAHER

Lesson (4 / C)

CLIL: MATH

- Estimated answer isn't the actual answer. It's a good guess.

- الإجابة التقديرية ليست الإجابة الفعلية ولكنها تخمين جيد.

12 + 17 is about 30.

- To say estimated answer, we can use:

It's about ...

It's near ...

It's around ...

It's close to ...



What's 88 + 90 + 27?



It's around 200.

Circle the correct estimated answer.

- 34 + 47 = (60 - 80 - 120)
- 77 + 120 = (80 - 130 - 200)
- 338 + 336 = (480 - 680 - 980)
- 1050 + 50 + 104 = (1000 - 1200 - 2000)
- 17 + 39 + 44 + 308 = (300 - 400 - 500)



Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

- A villager wanted to sell his beans. ☐
- The villager could walk far. ☐
- The camel took the beans to the supermarket. ☐
- His camel helped him and took the beans. ☐

2 Listen and complete. استمع واكمل.

- The camel took the _____ of beans to the market.
- It walked _____ the road.
- It didn't _____ the road.
- The camel lost its _____

3 Read and match. اقرأ ووصل.

- | | |
|----------------------|-------------------------|
| The jerboa | a sound as "ate". |
| "Eight" has the same | b It's near 40. |
| What's 20 + 19? | c could hear well. |
| The camel offered | d fly high in the sky. |
| The ibis could | e to help the villager. |
- 1-() 2-() 3-() 4-() 5-()

4 Read the following text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

At first, Gabi offered to help the villager by taking the sacks of beans to the market. He lost his way but he didn't want anyone to know that he was lost. The ibis could help him because he could fly over the land. The snake could help because he went to the market every day. At the end, he learnt that asking for help is good.

- A) Choose the correct answer from a,b, c or d
- Gabi offered to help the _____
 - a) snake b) villager c) jerboa d) ibis

- The jerboa could _____ well with its big ears.
- a) hear b) smell c) taste d) play

5 Answer the following questions.

- Where did the snake go every day?
- What lesson did Gabi learn?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة.

farmer vegetables Does grow the ?

toothache 1 bad a have .

animal first does Which Gabi meet ?

cake birthday Let's for make a my .

7 Write a paragraph of about (40) words. اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

Going to the market and getting lost

Guiding words:

mom asked market lost didn't ask sorry learnt a lesson

7 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

Was ahmed right to behave in this way

استمع واقرأ.

Listen and read.

This is one of the most exciting cities in the world. It often rains here, but it doesn't matter because there are lots of fun things to do. You can go on a big red bus and visit amazing tourist attractions.



London

هذه واحدة من أكثر المدن إثارة في العالم. غالبًا ما تمطر هنا. ولكن لا يهم لأن هناك الكثير من الأشياء الممتعة يمكنك القيام بها. يمكنك الذهاب في حافلة حمراء كبيرة وزيارة المعالم السياحية المذهلة.

You will see famous places like Buckingham Palace, theaters, and the British Museum. You can take a relaxing boat trip on the River Thames and go under the famous bridges. All the walking around will make you hungry! But don't worry, there are plenty of different restaurants to choose from. You can find delicious food from all over the world here!

هناك الكثير من الأماكن الشهيرة مثل قصر Buckingham، المسارح، والمتحف البريطاني. يمكنك أخذ رحلة قارب استرخاء على نهر التايمز والذهاب تحت الجسور الشهيرة. كل المشي سيتركك جائعًا! ولكن لا تقلق، هناك الكثير من المطاعم المختلفة للاختيار من بينها. يمكنك أن تجد طعامًا لذيذًا من جميع أنحاء العالم هنا!

- To write a description of your own town or city to encourage people to visit it, write notes about the good things.

لكي تكتب وصفًا لمدينتك الصغيرة أو الكبيرة لكي تشجع الناس على زيارتها، اكتب ملاحظات عن الأشياء الجيدة.

1- famous attractions

المعالم السياحية المشهورة

2- location - is it near a beach/river?

الموقع - هل هي قريبة من شاطئ / نهر؟

3- history - culture - arts

التاريخ / الثقافة / الفنون

Help your child read about a famous city.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن مدينة مشهورة

Lessons (5 & 6)

- WRITING - PROJECT

Vocabulary

tourist attractions	المعالم السياحية	relaxing	مرتاح
Buckingham Palace	قصر باكينغهام	delicious	لذيذ
The River Thames	نهر التايمز	famous	مشهور
Archaeological center	المركز الأثري	treasures	كنوز
The British Museum	المتحف البريطاني	New Alamein	مدينة العلمين الجديدة
International Park	المتنزه الدولي	water park	متنزه مائي

Conjugation of verbs

نصيغ الأفعال

rain	تسطر	rained	make	يفعل / يصنع	made
choose	يختار	chose	find	يجد	found

Important expressions and prepositions

It doesn't matter.	لا يهم	plenty of	كثير من
lots of fun things	كثير من الأشياء الممتعة	in the middle of	في وسط
from all over the world	من كل أنحاء العالم	Don't worry.	لا تقلق

Tip!

When you are trying to encourage people to go to a place, use positive adjectives to describe the place.

عندما تحاول إقناع أشخاص بالذهاب إلى مكان، استخدم صفات إيجابية لوصف هذا المكان. وصفاً بـ بعض الصفات الإيجابية.

exciting	مثير	beautiful	جميل	delicious	لذيذ
famous	مشهور	fascinating	ساحر / خلاب	amazing	مذهل
relaxing	مرتاح	perfect	كامل / مثالي	wonderful	رائع

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

NEW ALAMEIN

There are many exciting things to do in New Alamein. The city is on the beach so you can visit the cool sea when it's hot. This beautiful beach is 14 kms long! There is also a large, green lake right in the middle of the city! You can also visit the beautiful International Park. If you want to learn about the fascinating history of the area, then visit the Archaeological Center. There are some amazing treasures there. I can't wait to see you in New Alamein.



بيت القصور الجديد

العديد من الأشياء المثيرة التي يمكنك القيام بها في مدينة نيو ألامين الجديدة. تقع المدينة على شاطئ البحر الذي يبلغ طوله 14 كم. يمكنك زيارة بحيرة خضراء كبيرة تقع في وسط المدينة. يمكنك أيضاً زيارة حديقة الحيوان الدولية الجميلة. إذا كنت ترغب في التعرف على التاريخ المثير للمنطقة، فراجع المتاحف الرائجة في نيو ألامين. هناك لا تنضب الأشياء الرائجة التي يمكنك القيام بها في مدينة نيو ألامين الجديدة.

Our perfect town

In our perfect town, there is a big zoo right next to the school. We can go there every afternoon after classes.

We can help to feed the animals.

It is really hot in our town, so there is a water park that is always open. It's free to go in!

There is a wonderful market that sells all kinds of delicious food, like fresh bread and fresh fruit and vegetables.

There is a big park with lots of trees so we can go for family picnics in the shade.

This is our perfect town!



بنيتنا المثالية

في مدينتنا المثالية، توجد حديقة حيوانات كبيرة بجوار المدرسة مباشرة. يمكننا الذهاب إلى هناك بعد الظهر كل يوم بعد انتهاء الحصص. يمكننا المساعدة في إطعام الحيوانات.

هو حار جداً في مدينتنا، لذا توجد حديقة مائية ممتلئة دائماً الدخول مجاني.

توجد سوق رائع يبيع جميع أنواع الأطعمة الشهية، مثل الخبز الطازج والفواكه والخضروات الطازجة.

توجد حديقة كبيرة بها الكثير من الأشجار، لذا يمكننا الذهاب في برهات عائلية في الظل.

هذه مدينتنا المثالية!



Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

- 1 This is our perfect town.
- 2 There is a big library next to the school.
- 3 We can go to the zoo after classes.
- 4 The water park isn't free.

☐
☐
☐
☐

2 Listen and complete.

استمع واكمل.

- 1 There's a market in our town.
- 2 The market sells all kinds of food.
- 3 There's a park with lots of trees.
- 4 We can go for family picnics in the

3 Read and match.

اقرأ ووصل.

- 1 London is one of the sells all kinds of food.
- 2 There's a big market that middle of the city.
- 3 You can visit the beautiful on the beach.
- 4 There's a lake in the most exciting cities.
- 5 The city is International Park.

1- ()

2- ()

3- ()

4- ()

5- ()

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

There are many exciting things to do in New Alamein. The city is on the beach so you can visit the cool sea when it's hot. This beautiful beach is 14 kms long! There is also a large, green lake right in the middle of the city! You can also visit the beautiful International Park. If you want to learn about the fascinating history of the area, then visit the Archaeological Center. There are some amazing treasures there. I can't wait to see you in New Alamein.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1 The passage is about
a) Alexandria b) Suez c) New Alamein d) Ismalia
- 2 The beach is kms long.
a) 18 b) 14 c) 20 d) 40

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 What can you visit when it's hot?
- 4 Where can you see amazing treasures?

5 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 London is one of the most exciting in the world.
a) countries b) cities c) towns d) villages
- 2 In London you can visit amazing tourist
a) habitats b) attractions c) precipitation d) stations

- 3 Buckingham is a
a) zoo b) hospital c) palace d) museum

- 4 You can take a trip on the River Thames.
a) bus b) boat c) car d) train

- 5 The city is on the so you can swim when it's hot.
a) beach b) desert c) park d) garden

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات للتكوين جملًا صحيحة.

- 1 are - treasures - There - amazing - some - .

- 2 is - Alamein - Where - New - ?

- 3 free - water park - The - is - in - to - go - .

- 4 places - London - What - visit - can - in - you - ?

7 Write a paragraph of about (40) words.

اكتب فقرة من 40 كلمة.

"My perfect town"

Guiding words:

(water park zoo markets restaurants shopping malls)

Review on Unit (10)

Places in a city

museum	متحف	bank	بنك	factory	مصنع
restaurant	مطعم	library	مكتبة	monument	نصب
market	سوق	square	ميدان	shopping mall	مركز تسوق
beach	شاطئ	station	محطة	cuisine	طبخ

Activities

play music	لعب موسيقى	make a phone call	جاء اتصال هاتفي
bake bread	خبز خبز	visit a temple	زور معبد
read a book	اقرأ كتاب	sail on the Nile	يسبح على النيل

Ancient Egypt

monuments	أثار	pharaohs	فراعنة	tomb	قبرة
on vacation	في إجازة	artifact	حقيقة يدوية	originally	ملا
hieroglyphics	الكتابة الهيروغليفية	evidence	دليل	painting	رسم

Language

- Don't be late tomorrow.
- Go to the end of the street and turn right.
- Come here, Lama!

Phonics

/əʊ/	/ei/	/ɔɪ/	/aɪ/
show	eight	toy	right
go	make	boy	night
grow	bake	enjoy	write

- Math What's $88+90+27$?
- It's around 200.

Writing Corner

Write a paragraph of about (40) words. اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

"Alexandria"

Alexandria is a very beautiful city. It is on the sea. We go to the beach when it is hot. We swim in the sea. We play on the beach. It has interesting places to visit. You can also visit the Citadel and many other places.

"London"

London is an exciting city. There are lots of fun things to do. You can go on a big red bus and visit amazing tourist attractions. You can take a relaxing boat trip on the River Thames. You can find delicious food from all over the world there. London is full of history.

"New Alamein"

There are many exciting things to do in New Alamein. The city is on the beach so you can visit the cool sea when it's hot. This beautiful beach is 14 kms long! There is also a large green lake right in the middle of the city! You can also visit the beautiful International Park. If you want to learn about the fascinating history of area, then visit the Archaeological Center.

Help your child write paragraphs.

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب فقرات.

AL-BAHER - Connect (5)

165

Dictation on Unit (10)

Lesson (11)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	متحف		بك
	نعناع		شاطبي
	طبخ		عب نذكاري
	سوق		حقة
	مكتبة		مجمع

Lesson (12)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	دليل		مقابر
	أثر		ورق بردي
	دهان / تلوين		موز
	حرف يدوية		هام / مهم
	الكتابة الهيروغليفية		يحتفل

Lesson (13 & 14)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	زار		اليربوع
	أمين المكتبة		فخم
	بيئة		بعيد
	مخلوق		يعتذر
	أبو منجل		يسلم

Lesson (5 & 6)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	أماكن جذب سياحي		مثالي
	مسترخي / مريح		متنزه مائي
	لذيذ		كنوز
	موقع		قصر
	ثقافة		تاريخ

Activities on Unit (10)

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

- We don't know much about Ancient Egypt. ☐
- There's a lot of evidence that tell us about Ancient Egypt. ☐
- Artifacts don't tell us how people lived. ☐
- Paintings show scenes of daily life. ☐

2 Listen and complete. استمع وأكمل.

- Seif went to.....
- London has lots of attractions.
- Seif visited the Museum.
- Seif took a boat on the River Thames.

3 Read and match. اقرأ وامل.

- They will be around ☐ a help the villager.
- Does the farmer ☐ b lunch with us.
- Gabi offered to ☐ c 50 Egyptian pounds.
- Come and have ☐ d back in two weeks.
- Bring your book ☐ e grow vegetables?

1-() 2-() 3-() 4-() 5-()

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

6 Punctuate the following.

⇒ it's around 200

⇒ what lesson did Gabi learn

7 Write a paragraph of about (40) words.

اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

"Giza"

Guiding words:

(wonderful - city - the Pyramids - the Sphinx
- the Nile - farms and fields)

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Luxor is a wonderful city. I went there last winter. The weather there is hot in winter. The city is full of history. You can see and visit many temples there. This beautiful city is in Upper Egypt. It has wonderful hotels. They serve delicious food there. I visited the Valley of the Kings and Queens. I took a boat trip on the Nile. I had a wonderful time there.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1 Luxor is a city.

a) wonderful b) bad c) boring d) ugly

2 The city is full of

a) geography b) history c) science d) math

B) Answer the following questions.

3 Where is Luxor?

4 What did you take on the Nile?

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة.

1 safely - keep - bank - I - in - money - a - .2 the market - does - What - sell - ?3 toothache - bad - a - I - have - .4 is - school - to - There - the - a big - next - zoo - .

Unit 11

Getting out in the fresh air



In this unit the student will:

- listen, read, research, and write about nature trails.

يستمع ويقرأ ويبحث ويكتب عن متنزهات الطبيعة

- recognize adjectives and adverbs.

يتعرف على الصفات والظروف (الأحوال).

- learn words about nature.

يتعلم كلمات عن الطبيعة

- listen to a conversation about hiking.

يسمع محادثة عن التسلق

- read about hiking in the Red Sea Mountain Trail.

يقرأ عن التجول في متنزه جبل البحر الأحمر

- read and say words with /n/ and /ŋ/ sounds.

يقرأ ويقول كلمات بها أصوات /n/ و /ŋ/

- write text messages.

يكتب رسائل نصية.

- design a nature trail.

يُصمم مسار الطبيعة

Lesson (1)

GETTING OUT IN NATURE

Listen and say.

استمع وقل.



village
قرية



city
مدينة كبيرة



hill
تل



rock
صخرة



Nature
الطبيعة



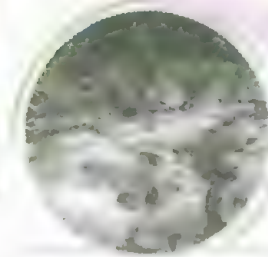
leaf
ورقة شجر



plant
نبات



tree
شجرة



stream
جدول ماء



grass
حشائش

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Study the following:

A stream is like a river, but smaller.

جدول الماء مثل النهر ولكنه أصغر.

I love the feeling of green grass under my feet.

أحب الشعور بملمس الحشائش الخضراء تحت أقدامي.

A tree is a very tall plant with branches and wooden trunk.

الشجرة هي نبات طويل بأغصان وجذع خشبي.

A village is much smaller than a town or city.

القرية اسم يكثر من المدينة أو المدينة الصغيرة.

It's quite difficult to climb that hill because it's very high.

إنه صعب إلى حد ما أن نتسلق ذلك التل لأنه عالي جدًا.

Some famous cities in Egypt are Cairo, Alexandria and Hurghada.

بعض المدن المشهورة في مصر هي القاهرة والإسكندرية والغردقة.

A rock is hard. It is a large stone.

الصخرة صلبة. وهي حجر كبير.

I like growing tomato plants because I like eating tomatoes.

أحب زراعة نباتات الطماطم لأنني أحب تناول الطماطم.

That plant has flowers and lots of green leaves.

هذا النبات له زهور والكثير من الأوراق الخضراء.



Plural Nouns الأسماء المتعددة

-To make plurals, we usually add (s) to the noun.

- للتحويل إلى الجمع يتم عادة إضافة (s) في نهاية الاسم.



-If the noun ends in (-y), then we take off the "y" and add (ies):

- الاسم الذي ينتهي بـ (-y) قبلها ساكن يحذف ثم يضاف (ies).



-If the noun ends in (-f), then we take off the (-f) and add (-ves):

- الاسم الذي ينتهي بـ (-f) يحذف ثم يضاف (ves).



Change into plural.

حول للجمع.

a pen	→	_____	a wolf	→	_____
a house	→	_____	an orange	→	_____
a city	→	_____	a rock	→	_____
a leaf	→	_____	a baby	→	_____



Activities

1 Read and match.

- | | |
|----------------------|--------------------------|
| A stream is like | a) very tall plant. |
| A tree is a | b) are famous cities. |
| A rock is | c) a river, but smaller. |
| Cairo and Alexandria | d) a large stone. |
| | e) green leaves. |

1-() 2-() 3-() 4-()

2 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 A is like a river, but smaller.
a) hill b) leaf c) stream d) rock
- 2 I love the feeling of green under my feet.
a) hill b) city c) rock d) grass
- 3 A is a very tall plant with branches and wooden trunk.
a) rock b) tree c) stream d) leaf
- 4 A is much smaller than a town or city.
a) rock b) stream c) village d) hill
- 5 The is very high.
a) hill b) stream c) plant d) leaf
- 6 Some famous in Egypt are Cairo, Alexandria and Hurghada.
a) villages b) rocks c) streams d) cities

اقرأ وصل.

- 1 A is hard. It is a large stone.
a) rock b) stream c) hill d) grass

- 2 I like growing tomato because I like eating tomatoes.
a) hills b) plants c) rocks d) streams

- 3 That plant has flowers and lots of green
a) cities b) houses c) leaves d) rocks

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

- 1 like - is - A stream - a river - smaller - but - .

- 2 stone - large - A rock - is - a - .

- 3 plants - I - growing - like - tomato - .

- 4 feeling - grass - I - green - like - of - the - .

4 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- ⇒ i can see some trees

5 Write a paragraph of about (40) words.

اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

Getting out in nature

Guiding words:

(see - trees - stream - grass - hills)

Lesson (2)

NATURE TRAIL WEEKEND

Key Vocabulary

كلمات رئيسية

nature trail	متنزه طبيعي	taking photos	التقاط الصور
dates	تواريخ	brave	شجاع
The blue lagoon	البحيرة الزرقاء		

Conjugation of verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Regular verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
guess	يُخمن / guessed	talk	يلكلم / talked
invite	يدعو / invited	contact	يتصل به / contacted
accept	يقبل / accepted	walk	يمشي / walked
work	يعمل / worked	open	يفتح / opened
check	يفحص / checked	decide	يقرر / decided

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
go	يذهب / went	speak	يتحدث / spoke
write	يكتب / wrote	drive	يقود / drove

Nature trail (n): A place you go for a hike in nature to see all the plants and animals.

المتنزه الطبيعي: هو مكان في الطبيعة تتمشى فيه لترى كل النباتات والحيوانات.

Listen and read.

استمع واقراء

From: Dina
To: Reem
Subject: Nature trail weekend



Hi Reem, How's life?

Guess what? My family and I want to go on a trail to Wadi Degla or the Blue Lagoon at Dahab. Mom said I can take a friend, and I want to take you! Can you come? Mom said you and I can decide which we like best of the two places.

Wadi Degla is cool because you can see lots of animals, but you can swim at the Blue Lagoon! I know you walk quickly and swim well, so which nature trail do you like? Also, what dates do you prefer, 13-14 July or 20-21 July?

Bye for now!

Dina

من: دينا

إلى: ريم

الموضوع: عطلة نهاية الأسبوع في متنزه طبيعي.

مرحباً ريم،

كيف الحال؟

خمن ماذا؟ عائلتي وأنا نريد أن نذهب في رحلة إلى وادي دجلة أو البحيرة الزرقاء في دهب. أمي قالت أنني أستطيع أخذ صديقة، وأنا أريد أن تأخذيني! هل يمكنك القدوم؟ أمي قالت أننا يمكننا أن نقرر أي المكانين نحبهما أكثر. وادي دجلة رائع لأنه يمكنك رؤية الكثير من الحيوانات، ولكن يمكنك السباحة في البحيرة الزرقاء! أعلم أنك تهتمين بسرعة وتسيرين جيداً، فما هو المسار الطبيعي الذي تحبينه؟ أيضاً، ما التواريخ التي تفضلينها ١٣ - ١٤ يوليو أو ٢٠ - ٢١ يوليو؟

بني الغدا

دينا

Reply الرد

From: Reem
To: Dina
Subject: Nature trail weekend



Hi Dina,
Life's great! How are you?
The nature trail trip sounds like fun, and I really want to come!
I think the Blue Lagoon is fine because we can swim and dive!
Yes, I can swim quickly, but you're very brave! Remember
when you dived from that rock? I just talked to my mom and
the weekend 20-21 July is good for me. She's going to call
your mom to check everything.

Can't wait to see you!

Reem

مر ريم

الي دينا

الموضوع: رحلة نهاية الأسبوع في سفرة صيفي

مرحباً دينا

السلامة والهدوء كيف حالكم؟

سأكون في رحلة التلاوة في الطبيعة ممتعة وأريد جداً أن أتي ألتحق بـ (البحيرة الزرقاء) حيث أننا بعددنا الكثير

والفرح! نعم، يمكنني السباحة بسرعة، ولكنك شجاعة جداً! هل تتذكرين عندما قممتي بالغوص عند تلك

البحيرة؟ لقد تحدثنا للتو مع أمي وعلمنا نهاية الأسبوع 20-21 يوليو جيدة بالنسبة لي (سواء) أتيت، فكل

الشيء من كل شيء.

لا أستطيع الانتظار لروايتك

ريم

Adjectives الصفات

Images

We use **adjectives** to give more information about nouns.

نستخدم (الصفات) لإعطاء معلومات إضافية عن الأسماء.

eg. It was a **sunny** day.

Adverbs الأحوال

Images

We use **adverbs** to give more information about verbs.

نستخدم (الأحوال) لإعطاء معلومات إضافية عن الأفعال.

eg. She walked **slowly**.

To make adverbs, we usually add **(-ly)** to an adjective.

لتكوين (الأحوال)، عادةً نضيف (ly) في نهاية الصفة.

slow → slowly sad → sadly

Note:

If the adjective ends in **(consonant + y)** then delete the **(y)** and add **(-ily)**.
إذا كانت الصفة تنتهي بـ (y) يسبقها حرف ساكن تحذف (y) ثم يضاف (ily).

happy → happily heavy → heavily

If the adjective ends in **(l)**, we add **(ly)** too.

إذا كانت الصفة تنتهي بـ (l)، نضع (ly) أيضاً.

beautiful → beautifully

Regular adverbs

الأحوال المنتظمة

adjective	adverb	adjective	adverb
happy	happily	heavy	heavily
slow	slowly	sad	sadly
quick	quickly	careful	carefully
nice	nicely	bad	badly
nervous	nervously	polite	politely
clever	cleverly	active	actively

Irregular adverbs

الأحوال الغير منتظمة

adjective	adverb	adjective	adverb
fast	fast	hard	hard
good	well	early	early

Study the following.

- 1 Wael swims well. He is a **good** swimmer.
- 2 Salma runs quickly. She is a **quick** runner.
- 3 Jailan speaks politely. She is a **polite** girl.
- Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.**
- 1 My friend is a _____ person.
a) nice b) nicer c) nicely d) badly
- 2 My sister says I sing _____.
a) bad b) badly c) good d) worse
- 3 The man opened the door _____.
a) nervous b) nervously c) good d) bad
- 4 Adam drove the car _____.
a) fast b) fastly c) heavy d) clever



Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ

- 1 My family and I want to go on a trail. ☐
- 2 I can't take a friend. ☐
- 3 We can swim at Wadi Degla. ☐
- 4 You can see lots of animals in Wadi Degla. ☐

اقرأ وصل

2 Read and match.

- 1 The nature trail trip a) very heavily.
- 2 He swims well. b) sounds like fun.
- 3 Jana speaks politely. c) She is a polite girl.
- 4 It was raining d) He is a good swimmer.
- 5 happily ever after.

1- () 2- () 3- () 4- ()

3 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.
down the street.

- 1 She walked _____.
a) slow b) slowly c) slower d) slowest
- 2 He did his homework _____.
a) happily b) happy c) happier d) happiest
- 3 Salma runs quickly. She is a _____ runner.
a) quicker b) quickest c) quickly d) quick
- 4 Jailan speaks _____. She is a polite girl.
a) polite b) politely c) bad d) good
- 5 My dad speaks Spanish really _____.
a) good b) bad c) well d) careful
- 6 Hatem is a _____ designer.
a) cleverly b) cleverer c) clever d) cleverest

Help your child deal with such questions

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Hi Dina,

The nature trail trip sounds like fun, and I really want to go. I think the Blue Lagoon is fine because we can swim and dive. I can swim quickly but you're very brave. I just talked to my mom and the weekend (20-21) July is good for me. She's going to call your mom to check everything.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) The underlined word "fine" means

a) bad b) badly c) good d) worse

2) The writer can swim

a) quickly b) quick c) slow d) slowly

B) Answer the following questions.

1) Where are they going?

2) Why do you think the Blue Lagoon is fine?

C) Order the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

1) was a 10 day sunny

2) is an driver a brave

3) swimming like Dina - Reem - and - both -

4) spoke well She English

D) Write a paragraph of about (40) words.

اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

Nature trail weekend

Guiding words:

family go on trail take friend swim Blue Lagoon

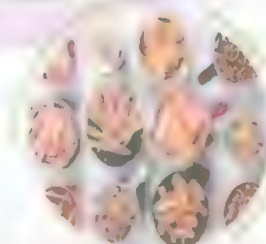
see animals Wadi Degla

Lesson
(3)

THE RED SEA MOUNTAIN TRAIL

Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

map
خريطةhiking shoes
حذاء للتمشية الطويلةscarf
وشاح / كوميهsunglasses
نظارة شمسيةtent
خيمةblanket
بطانيةhat
قبعةtent
خيمةsnacks
وجبات خفيفةwater bottle
زجاجة ماء

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

hiking	التنزه (سيرا على الأقدام)	community
tourism	السياحة	routes
guide	مرشد	hikers
fascinating	ساحر / جذاب / خلاب	preserve(d)

Important expressions and propositions

عبارات مهمة

How's life?	كيف حالك؟	Guess what..?
Bye for now!	وداعاً الآن	sounds like fun.
tell about	تحدث عن	look after

Listen and read the text.

استمع و اقرأ النص.

What is the Red Sea Mountain Trail?

ما هو ممشى جبل البحر الأحمر؟

The Red Sea Mountain Trail was the first long-distance hiking trail to open in Egypt. It runs for around 170 kms through the wonderful mountains near Hurghada. It is a community tourism project. It helps the local Maaza people preserve their culture and history. The trail follows ancient trading and hunting routes in the Eastern Desert. The Maaza people used these routes for centuries. They look after the trail carefully and work as guides. They tell the hikers about the geography and history of this wonderful place. They also tell the hikers about their fascinating culture. It takes around ten days to complete the trail.



إن ممشى جبل البحر الأحمر أول متنزه مشى لمسافات طويلة يتم افتتاحه في مصر. يمتد لمسافة ١٧٠ كم عبر الجبال الرائعة بالقرب من الغردقة. إنه مشروع سياحي مجتمعي. ويساعد شعوب المعازة المحليين في الحفاظ على ثقافتهم وتاريخهم. يتبع الممشى طرق التجارة والمعاد القديمة في الصحراء الشرقية. استخدم شعب المعازة هذه الطرق لعدة قرون. إنهم يعتنون بالمشى ويعملون كمرشدين. ويخبرون المتنزهين عن جغرافية وتاريخ هذا المكان الرائع. كما يخبرون المتنزهين أيضاً عن ثقافتهم الرائعة. يستغرق الأمر حوالي عشرة أيام للانتهاء من الممشى.

Listen to these speakers going on the Red Sea Mountain Trail.

Interviewer : Hi Sherif, What are you taking on the Red Sea Mountain Trail?

مرحباً شريف. ماذا ستأخذ في ممشى جبل البحر الأحمر؟

Sherif : Hi! Well, I want to protect my feet so I'm taking some hiking shoes. I know there are a lot of hills and rocks so I don't want to fall over! I'm also going to take some snacks from home so I don't get hungry.

مرحباً. حسناً. أريد أن أحمي قدمي لذا سأخذ حذاء التجول. أعرف أن هناك الكثير من التلال والصخور. لذا لا أريد أن أسقطاً سوقي. أيضاً سوف أأخذ بعض الوجبات الخفيفة من البيت حتى لا أشعر بالجوع.

Interviewer : Hi Ramy, What are you taking on the Red Sea Mountain Trail?

مرحباً رامي. ماذا ستأخذ في ممشى جبل البحر الأحمر؟

Ramy : My friend said it gets very hot on the trail in the places where there are no streams, so I'm taking a hat for my head. I'm also going to take a blanket in case I get cold at night.

قال صديقي إن الجو يصبح حاراً جداً على الممشى في الأماكن التي لا توجد بها جداول ماء. لذا سوف أرتدي قبعة لرأسي. سأخذ أيضاً بطانية في حال شعرت بالبرد في الليل.

Interviewer : Hi Lama, what are you taking on the Red Sea Mountain Trail?

مرحباً لاما. ماذا ستأخذين في ممشى جبل البحر الأحمر؟

Lama : Someone told me you can sometimes get sand in your eyes on the Red Sea Mountain Trail, so I'm taking a scarf to protect my head and eyes. The other important thing for me is to take lots of water bottles- I seem to drink more than other people so I want to be prepared.

أخبرني أحدهم أنه يمكن أحياناً أن تدخل الرمال في عينك في ممشى جبل البحر الأحمر. لذلك سأرتدي وشاحاً لحماية رأسي وعيني. الشيء الآخر المهم بالنسبة لي هو أن أأخذ الكثير من زجاجات الماء يبدو أنني أشربها أكثر من الآخرين لذا أريد أن أكون جاهزاً.

Interviewer : Hi Nesma, what are you taking on the Red Sea Mountain Trail?

مرحباً نسمة. ماذا ستأخذين في ممشى جبل البحر الأحمر؟

Nesma : I love checking the route so I'm taking a map. And I'm going to take my cool sunglasses, too to protect my eyes. It's going to be such fun!

أحب التحقق من الطريق لذا سأخذ خريطة. سوف أأخذ نظارتي الشمسية الجميلة أيضاً لحماية عيني. سيكون الأمر ممتعاً للغاية.



Activities

1 Listen and complete.

استمع وأكمل.

- Sherif is going on the Red Sea Mountain
- He's going to take to protect his feet.
- He's going to take some from home.
- There are a lot of and rocks.

2 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- I get thirsty, so I always take a
a) hat b) sunglasses c) water bottle d) stone
- He takes to protect his eyes.
a) maps b) sunglasses c) water bottle d) blankets
- Sara loves checking the route so she is taking a
a) map b) bottle c) scarf d) hat
- You should take a to protect your head and neck.
a) map b) water bottle c) snack d) scarf
- I want to protect my feet so I'm taking my hiking
a) shoes b) bottles c) snacks d) sunglasses
- She gets cold at night so she is going to take a
a) bottle b) scarf c) blanket d) map

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

- always - take - I - bottle - a - water - .
- want - I - my - to - feet - protect - .
- the Red Sea you are What taking on Mountain Trail ?

Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

The Red Sea Mountain Trail was the first long-distance hiking trail to open in Egypt. It runs for around 170 kms through the wonderful mountains near Hurghada. It is a community tourism project. It helps the local Maaza people preserve their culture and history. The trail follows ancient trading and hunting routes in the Eastern Desert.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The underlined word "preserve" means
a) break b) run c) keep d) waste
- The trail follows ancient trading and hunting routes in the Desert.
a) Eastern b) Northern c) Western d) Southern

B) Answer the following questions.

- What is the Red Sea Mountain Trail?
- How long is the trail?

5 Write a paragraph of about (40) words.

اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

The Red Sea Mountain Trail

Guiding words:

long hiking trail Egypt 170 kms wonderful -
community tourism project - Maaza people)

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

who looks after the trail

WORD BUILDING

Noun (n) الاسم

Noun is a word for (things, people, or places).

الاسم هو كلمة تدل على الأشياء، الأشخاص أو الأماكن.

e.g. The **beauty** of the ocean in the sun was incredible.

Adjective (adj) الصفة

Adjective is a word that describes a noun.

الصفة هي كلمة تستخدم لوصف الاسم.

- We can add **(ful)** to a noun to make an adjective.

من الممكن أن نضيف (ful) للإسم ليكون صفة.

e.g. The Red Sea Mountain Trail is very **beautiful**.

Adverb (adv) الظرف / الحال

Adverb is word that describes a verb.

الحال / الظرف هو كلمة تستخدم لوصف طريقة حدوث الفعل.

- We can add **(fully)** to an adjective to make adverb.

من الممكن أن نضيف (fully) للصفة لتكون مفعلة.

e.g. She sang **beautifully** during the show.

Study the following table.

Noun	Adjective	Adverb
wonder	العجب / الإعجاب wonderful	wonderfully
beauty	الجمال beautiful	beautifully
joy	الفرحة joyful	joyfully
hope	الأمل hopeful	hopefully
pain	الألم painful	painfully
stress	الضغط stressful	stressfully
care	الرعاية careful	carefully
thought	الفكر thoughtful	thoughtfully
meaning	المعنى meaningful	meaningfully

Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- It was the most _____ bird I saw on the trail.
a) wonder b) wonderful c) wonders d) wonderfully
- She packed her suitcase for the trip with a lot of _____.
a) care b) careful c) carefully d) worse
- There is so much natural _____ in the Red Sea.
a) beauty b) beautiful c) beautifully d) more beauty
- Adam drove the car _____.
a) care b) careful c) carefully d) caring
- My dad doesn't like working 12-hour days. He says its very _____.
a) stress b) stressful c) stressfully d) stressed
- The card you gave me was very _____. Thank you.
a) beautiful b) beauty c) beautiful d) beautifully

PRONUNCIATION

 Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد



nose



nature



ton



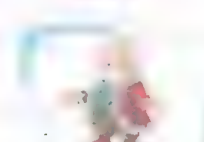
sun



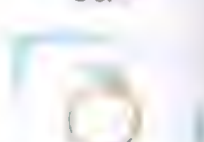
tongue



finger



king



ring

-The sounds /n/ and /ŋ/ sound similar but are pronounced differently.

-You make the /n/ sound, as in nose, by blocking the air in your mouth with the front of your tongue.

• ننطق الصوت /n/ في كلمة مثل (nose) بحجز الهواء في الفم بمقدمة اللسان.

-You make the /ŋ/ sound, as in sing, by blocking the air with the back of your tongue.

• ننطق الصوت /ŋ/ في كلمة مثل (sing) بحجز الهواء في الفم بمؤخرة اللسان.

- Listen and read the poem.

استمع واقرأ القصيدة.

- 1 I can see a king.
- 2 He's wearing a big ring.
- 3 He's not looking at the sun.
- 4 He thinks it weighs a ton.
- 5 Then the phone rang.
- 6 And he heard a big bang!



MIXED NUMBERS

عدد كسري

Mixed Numbers are numbers which are whole numbers and fractions.

(الأعداد الكسرية هي أعداد بأكملها وأجزاء من الأعداد بأكملها)

Adding mixed numbers.

جمع الأعداد الكسرية.

$$1\frac{1}{2} + 1\frac{1}{2} =$$

To add these together.

-First: add the whole numbers.

- أولاً: اجمع الأرقام الصحيحة.

$$3 + 4 = 7$$

-Next: add the fractions together.

- ثم اجمع الكسور معاً.

$$\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2} = \frac{2}{2}$$

- The whole number is (7).

- الرقم الصحيح هو (7).

- The total number is (8).

- الرقم الإجمالي هو (8).

Help your child add mixed numbers.

ساعد طفلك أن يجمع الأعداد الكسرية.

1 Add the mixed numbers.

أجمع الأعداد الكسرية.

1 $2\frac{4}{5} + 3\frac{1}{5} =$

2 $4\frac{1}{3} + 1\frac{2}{3} =$

3 $1\frac{1}{8} + 2\frac{2}{8} =$

4 $3\frac{2}{6} + 4\frac{3}{6} =$

5 $2\frac{1}{7} + 3\frac{6}{7} =$

6 $6\frac{5}{9} + 3\frac{4}{9} =$

2 Circle the correct answer.

دوّل الإجابة الصحيحة.

1 $2\frac{1}{5} + 3\frac{3}{5} =$ ☒ $5\frac{4}{5}$ ☐ $5\frac{3}{5}$

2 $7\frac{1}{12} + 8\frac{7}{12} =$ ☐ $16\frac{1}{12}$ ☒ $15\frac{8}{12}$

3 $3\frac{4}{6} + 5\frac{1}{6} =$ ☐ $8\frac{5}{6}$ ☒ $8\frac{7}{8}$

4 $4\frac{1}{8} + 1\frac{2}{8} =$ ☐ $5\frac{3}{16}$ ☒ $5\frac{3}{8}$

3 Answer the word problem.

أجب عن المسألة الكلامية.

1 Sara walks for $2\frac{3}{10}$ kms. She stops for a drink and then walks for another $1\frac{4}{10}$ kms. How far has Sara walked in total?

2 One nature trail is $3\frac{1}{2}$ kilometers long and another trail is $4\frac{1}{2}$ kilometers long. How long are the nature trails in total?



Activities

1 Look and complete.

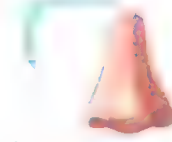
انظر وأكمل.



hiki__



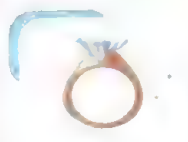
to__ue



__ose



su__



ri__



__atural



fi__er



ki__

2 Read and match.

اقرأ وصل.

1 It was the most wonderful

a beautifully.

2 The king is wearing

b bird I saw on the trail.

3 She sang

c a big ring.

4 I can see beautiful

d birds singing.

1-()

2-()

3-()

4-()

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة.

1 can - a - I - see - king - .

2 hungrily - The - ate - cat - .

3 during - beautifully - Sara - sang - show - the - .

4 am - very - I - careful - .

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Help your child answer these sums.

ساعد طفلك أن يجيب على هذه المسائل.

4 Add the mixed numbers.

أجمع الأعداد الكسرية.

1 $2\frac{1}{5} + 3\frac{3}{5}$

2 $1\frac{1}{6} + 1\frac{4}{6}$

3 $7\frac{1}{12} + 8\frac{7}{12}$

4 $3\frac{1}{8} + 2\frac{3}{8}$

5 $4\frac{4}{6} + 5\frac{1}{6}$

6 $4\frac{1}{8} + 1\frac{2}{8}$

5 Describe the pictures using.

صف الصور مستخدماً.

(beautifully - quietly - careful - wonderful)



6 Complete the following table.

أكمل الجدول الآتي.

Noun	Adjective	Adverb
wonder
	beautiful
joy
hope

Lessons
(5 & 6)- WRITING
- PROJECT

Key Vocabulary

free

غير مشغول sunlight

ضوء الشمس

cactus

صبار (نبات الصبار) palm tree

نخلة

tamarisk plant

نبات الطرفاء desert snail

فوفع الصدراء

jerboa

حيوان اليربوع scientist

عالم / عالمة

Tip!

Phrases to talk about plans:

Are you free on the weekend?

هل أنت متفرغ في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع؟

That sounds like fun.

هذا يبدو ممتعاً.

That sounds great.

هذا يبدو رائعاً.

Cool!

رائع! Awesome!

مدهشاً

Phrases for making suggestions:

How about

+ v + ing ... ?

ماذا عن.

What about

- How / What about meeting up?

Let's + inf. الفعل في المصدر

- Let's meet at 3.

Emojis to make the conversation fun:



a cactus for the desert.

Hi Malak! Are you free on the weekend?
 I'm good, thanks. Sure! What should we do?
 My mom and dad want to do a desert hike. Do you want to come?
 Yes, that sounds like fun!
 Great, should we pick you up?
 We don't want to go when it's too hot.
 How about me coming to your house?
 Good idea!
 What should I bring?
 Hiking shoes, water, and a sweater.
 OK!
 Great! Let's meet on Friday at 4 pm!
 Can't wait!



Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

- 1 Malak and her friend are busy on the weekend. ☐
- 2 They are going on a waterfall hike. ☐
- 3 They're going to meet on Friday. ☐
- 4 They're going to take shoes, water and sweaters. ☐

2 Read and match. اقرأ وصل.

- | | |
|------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 Are you free on | a coming to your house? |
| 2 Let's | b Hiking shoes and water. |
| 3 How about | c the weekend? |
| 4 What should I bring? | d meet at 4 p.m. |
| | e can't wait. |

1-() 2-() 3-() 4-()

3 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. اقرأ واختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

- | | | | | |
|---------------|--------------------------|-------------|------------|--|
| 1 How about | to the movie tonight? | | | |
| a) go | b) goes | c) went | d) going | |
| 2 Should we | you up at 7 a.m? | | | |
| a) picks | b) pick | c) picked | d) picking | |
| 3 That | like fun. | | | |
| a) sounds | b) sounds to | c) sounding | d) sound | |
| 4 Do you want | get a milkshake? | | | |
| a) to | b) on | c) at | d) in | |
| 5 | you free on the weekend? | | | |
| a) Is | b) Does | c) Are | d) Was | |

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة.

1 should - we - What - do - ?2 meet - on - Let's - Friday -3 about - How - the movies - going - to - ?4 like - sounds - That - fun -

5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

My mom and dad want to do a desert hike. My friend Malak wants to come with us. We don't want to go when it's too hot. Malak is coming to our house. We will meet on Friday at 4 pm. We'll bring hiking shoes, water, and sweaters.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1 The opposite of the underlined word "hot" is

- a) warm b) cold c) sunny d) cloudy

2 My mom and dad want to do a hike.

- a) park b) desert c) waterfall d) garden

B) Answer the following questions.

3 What should they bring with them?

4 Where will the writer meet her friend?

6 Write a paragraph of about (40) words.

اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

A desert hike

Guiding questions:

1- When are you going?

2- Who are you going with?

3- How are you going?

4- What are you going to take?

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

Review on Unit (11)



Vocabulary

Nature

الطبيعة

hill	تل	route	طريق	hiking	التنزه لمسافات طويلة
tree	شجرة	rock	صخرة	hikers	متنزهين لمسافات طويلة
grass	حشائش	stream	جدول ماء	nature trail	التنزه في الطبيعة
leaf	ورقة شجر	plant	نبات	village	قرية
city	مدينة كبيرة	The Red Sea Mountain Trail			ممشى جبل البحر الأحمر

Hiking equipment

أدوات التنزه

hiking shoes	حذاء التنزه	snack	وجبة خفيفة	sunglasses	نظارة شمس
blanket	بطانية	tent	خيمة	map	خريطة
water bottle	زجاجة مياه	scarf	وشاح/كوفيه	sweater	سويتير / سترة
hat	قبعة	sunlight	ضوء الشمس	nature	طبيعة

Word building

بناء الكلمة

Noun (n)	Adjective (adj)	Adverb (adv)	Noun (n)	Adjective (adj)	Adverb (adv)
wonder	wonderful	wonderfully	pain	painful	painfully
beauty	beautiful	beautifully	care	careful	carefully
joy	joyful	joyfully	stress	stressful	stressfully
hope	hopeful	hopefully			

Phonics

صوتيات

(n)	ing	(n)	in
hiking	king	nose	ton
tongue	ring	know	sun
finger	bang	nature	

Help your child revise unit (11).

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الحادية عشر.

Adjectives الصفات

Usage:

- We use **adjectives** to give more information about nouns.

نستخدم الصفات لإعطاء مزيد من المعلومات عن الأسماء.

eg. It was a **sunny** day.

Adverb الحال / الظرف

Usage:

- We use **adverbs** to give more information about verbs.

نستخدم الظروف / الأحوال لإعطاء مزيد من المعلومات عن الأفعال.

eg. She walked **slowly**.

Regular adverbs الظروف / الأحوال المنتظمة

adjective	adverb	adjective	adverb
happy	سعيد happily	heavy	ثقيل heavily
slow	بطيء slowly	sad	حزين sadly
quick	سريع quickly	careful	حريص carefully
nice	لطيف nicely	bad	سيئ badly

Irregular adverbs الأحوال الغير منتظمة

adjective	adverb	adjective	adverb
fast	سريع fast	hard	بجد hard
good	جيد well	early	مبكرا early

Math

Adding mixed numbers. جمع الأعداد المختلطة

$$1\frac{1}{2} + 1\frac{1}{2} = 3$$

Writing Corner

- 1 Write a paragraph of about (40) words. اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

"Nature Trail"

Nature trail is a place you go for a hike in nature to see all the plants and animals. I like nature so I always go to nature trails in Egypt. I always go with my friend. We take our water bottles and snacks. To protect our feet we take hiking shoes. We take a scarf to protect our necks. We enjoy our time. We are always happy.

"The Red Sea Mountain Trail"

The Red Sea Mountain Trail was the first long-distance hiking trail to open in Egypt. It runs for around 170 kms through the wonderful mountains near Hurghada. It is a community tourism project. It helps the local Maaza people preserve their culture and history. The trail follows ancient trading and hunting routes in the Eastern Desert. The Maaza people used these routes for centuries. They look after the trail carefully and work as guides.

- 2 Write an email.

اكتب إيميل.

to your friend Ramy telling him about your "Nature trail weekend".

From:	Ali
To:	Ramy
Subject:	Nature trail weekend

Hi Ramy,
How are you?
My family and I want to go on a trail to the Blue Lagoon at Dahab. Mom said I can take a friend, and I want to take you. Can you come? We can swim at the Blue Lagoon. What dates do you prefer, 15-16 June or 20-21 June.
Bye for now!
Ali

Dictation on Unit (11)

Lesson (1)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	ورقة شجر		شجرة
	قرية		قرية
	جدول ماء		جدول ماء
	مدينة		مدينة
	طبيعة		طبيعة

Lesson (2)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	سعيد		سعيد
	بطي		بطي
	سريع		سريع
	ثقيل		ثقيل
	حزين		حزين
	جاد		جاد
	جيد		جيد
	حريص		حريص

Lesson (3)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	حذاء تنزه		حذاء تنزه
	بطانية		بطانية
	نظارة شمسية		نظارة شمسية
	خريطة		خريطة

Lesson (4)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	فرقة		فرقة
	جمال		جمال
	خاتم		خاتم
	ملك		ملك

Lessons (5 & 6)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	عالم		عالم
	ضوء الشمس		ضوء الشمس

Activities on Unit (11)

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

1 The nature trail trip sounds boring.

2 I like the Blue Lagoon.

3 I can't swim quickly.

4 My friend Dina is brave.

2 Listen and complete. استمع وأكمل.

1 It's very _____ on the trail because there are no streams.

2 I'm taking a _____ for my head.

3 I'm going to take a _____ in case I get cold.

4 At night it is _____.

3 Read and match. اقرأ واصل.

1 Reem's mom is going to

a fast runner.

2 She drove the car

b contact Dina's mom.

3 He is a hard worker.

c a king.

4 I'm taking a hat

d for my head.

5 I can see

e He works hard.

f too fast.

1-() 2-() 3-() 4-() 5-()

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Hello Sara, How are you? I'm having a real adventure here. We arrived on the weekend and set up our tent. It's quite difficult to sleep in a tent on sand. We sit around a fire. It gets really cold here at night. We sing songs and eat delicious food, which we cook on the fire. You can see million stars. It's beautiful. See you next week.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1 The underlined word "difficult" means

- a) easy b) simple c) hard d) sad

2 We are having a real here.

- a) adventure b) park c) race d) feast

B) Answer the following questions.

3 Where does the writer sleep?

4 Where do they sit?

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة.

1 like - A stream - is - river - a - .2 spoke - English - She - well - .3 looks - after - the - Who - trail - ?4 you Do - want - come - to - ?

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

⇒ who's worried about the heat

⇒ i get thirsty when I hike

7 Write a paragraph of about (40) words.

اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

"Hiking"

Guiding words:

(enjoy - nature - friends - hiking shoes - blanket
- sunglasses - tent)

Unit 12

Vacations

الvacation



In this unit, the student will ...

- listen, read, research, and write about vacations.
- think about environmental responsibility.
- learn about natural and man-made resources.
- practice using prepositions of time.
- listen to a conversation.
- learn about different types of triangles.
- read and say words with the /th/ sound.
- think about his perfect vacation.
- write a diary entry for his best day on vacation.
- write an ad for a vacation destination.

استمع إلى محادثة.

اقرأ في اجازته المصغرة

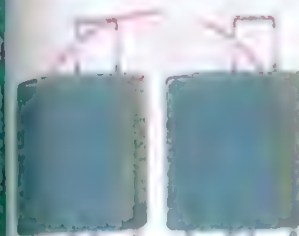
كتب إعلان عن مكان لقضاء إجازة.

Lesson (1)

A WORLD TRIP

Listen and say.

استمع وقل.



suitcases
حقائب سفر



swimming pool
حمام سباحة



airport
مطار



theme park
ملاهي



bay
خليج



ticket
تذكرة



hotel
مندق



passport
جواز سفر



Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

footprints

أثار القدم

museum

متحف

India

الهند

business trip

رحلة عمل

Singapore

سنغافورة

high-rise

ارتفاع عالم

vacation

إجازة

camera

كاميرا

boat trip

رحلة بالقارب



Important expressions and prepositions

on the roof of

على سطح.....

receive... from....

يتلقى ... من

on a business trip

في رحلة عمل

busy city

مدينة مزدحمة

fly from

يطير من

take photos

يلتقط مورا

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يعرف على هذه الكلمات

استمع واقرأ.

Nadia and Hany were in India last week, and this week they are in Singapore. Mom is reading the email aloud to her daughter Rana and her son Ali.



للتق أمي اليوم رسالة بريد إلكتروني من أختها نادية وزوجها ماني. إنهما في رحلة عمل مسافرون حول العالم. كانت نادية وماني في الهند الأسبوع الماضي، وهذا الأسبوع هم في سنغافورة. تقرأ أمي الرسالة بصوت عالٍ لابنتها وأنا وابنتها على

From: Nadiax@mail.com Subject: My trip

To: Sami ax@mail.com

Hello to you all from Singapore! It's hot here - about 36 degrees. Luckily, we've got a lovely hotel room. We're on the 42nd floor. The view is beautiful and we can see the beach. There's a huge swimming pool on the roof of the hotel! Can you believe it? The flight from India took about six hours, but it was comfortable and we both slept. I didn't take long to get through the airport when we arrived - we got our suitcases straight away.

تستدرو وقتاً طويلاً، وهم بعد القطار عندما ومنذ استسلمنا جملتنا على الفور

Singapore is a wonderful city. There are lots of high-rise buildings, but there are also many parks, gardens, and trees to sit under and relax. The Gardens by the Bay is a really special place where there are flowers and plants from all around the world. We spent a lot of time there. You really forget that you're in the middle of a busy city.

سنگافورة مدينة رائعة. هناك الكثير من المباني الشاهقة، ولكن هناك أيضًا العديد من المتنزهات والحدائق والأشجار الطويلة. هناك أيضًا بحيرة الجمال، وهو المكان المثالي لمشاهدة جمال الطبيعة. أنت تفتقد الكثير من الوقت هناك، أنت تنسى حقًا أنك في وسط مدينة مزدحمة.

Yesterday, we went on a boat trip with some other tourists to an island. There is a theme park. It was so much fun! After that, we visited the museum of ice cream! I had a 'Queen Bee' ice cream which is vanilla and honey with chocolate. It was great!

بالأمس، ذهبنا في رحلة بالقارب مع بعض السياح الآخرين إلى إحدى الجزر. يوجد ملاهي. كان الأمر ممتعاً جداً! بعد ذلك ارتأينا متحف الأمير كريم، وهو ليس كرم الملكة النحلة ولكنه يروي قصة الأمير والممثلة والعسل مع الشوكولاتة. كان رائقاً!

I hope you are all well. We will fly to Japan tomorrow and I'll send you another email when we arrive. Now I have to find our tickets and passports and pack our suitcases again!

Nadia

أتمنى أن تكونوا جميعًا بصحة جيدة. سوف نسافر إلى اليابان غدًا وسأرسل لكم بريده الإلكتروني آخر عندما نصل. والآن يجب أن أجد تذاكرنا وجوازات سفرنا وأن أحزم حقائبنا مرة أخرى!

သက်



Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

- 1 Today mom received an email from her sister.
- 2 Nadia and Hany are on a business trip.
- 3 Nadia and Hany were in Italy last week.
- 4 Mom is reading the email loudly.

☐
☐
☐
☐

2 Read and match. اقرأ وصل.

- | | |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1 They are staying | a a thing you take on vacation. |
| 2 The beach is a place | b so I can take photos. |
| 3 The passport is | c at a lovely a hotel. |
| 4 I always take my phone | d you go on vacation. |

1-() 2-() 3-() 4-()

3 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 I can't travel abroad without my
a) umbrella b) passport c) book d) magazine
- 2 I have to pack my
a) passports b) pools c) tickets d) suitcases
- 3 We can swim in the swimming
a) ball b) pool c) pole d) pill

- 4 There are and plants in the garden.
a) water b) flowers c) hotels d) tickets

- 5 Tourists always stay in
a) banks b) parks c) hotels d) beaches

- 6 In Singapore there a lot of buildings.
a) small b) tiny c) short d) high

- 7 are things you take on vacation.
a) Museums b) Cameras c) Hotels d) Beaches

- 8 I received an email my son Omar.
a) at b) by c) from d) for

- 9 They are a business trip traveling around the world.
a) at b) on c) in d) by

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

- 1 got - our - We - straight - suitcases - away - .

- 2 a - There - is - park - theme - .

- 3 you - What - do - vacation - on - do - ?

- 4 on - We - last - Friday - went - a boat trip - .

5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Singapore is a wonderful city. There are lots of high-rise buildings, but there are also many parks, gardens, and trees to sit under and relax. The Gardens by the Bay is a really special place where there are flowers and plants from all around the world. We spent a lot of time there. You really forget that you're in the middle of a busy city.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1 The underlined word "high-rise" means

a) short b) small c) big d) tall

2 Singapore is a wonderful

a) country b) town c) village d) city

B) Answer the following questions.

3 Where do the flowers and plants come from?

4 Where can you sit to relax in Singapore?

6 Write a paragraph of about (40) words.

اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

Guiding question:

Your vacation

1 When is your vacation?

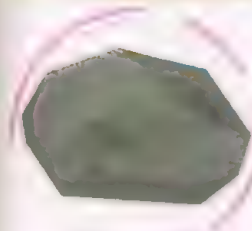
2 Where are you going on vacation?

2 What are you going to take on vacation?

Lesson (2)

CLIL: SCIENCE

Natural resources



rock
صخرة



sunlight
ضوء الشمس



gold
ذهب



sand
رمال



water
ماء



stone
حجر

Man-made resources



plastic plate
طبق بلاستيك



bicycle
دراجة



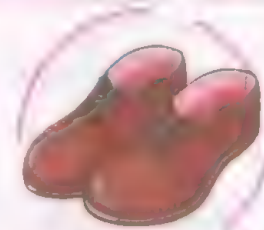
clothes
ملابس



bottle
زجاجة



basket
سلة



leather shoes
حذاء جلد



bread
خبز

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

fertile banks

الضفاف الخصبة

reeds

القصب (البنجر)

lucky

مستحسن

rain

مطر

Conjugation of verbs

تحويل الفعل

Regular verbs

فعل منتظم

Irregular verbs

فعل غير منتظم

Present

Past

Present

Past

harvest

يحصث

harvested

shine

تشية

shone

pack

يغص

packed

sell

يبيع

sold

Important expressions and prepositions

عبارات مهمة

wake up

يستيقظ

put on

يرتدي

boil water for

يغلي ماء لـ

live on

يعيش على

by plane

بالطائرة

swim in

يسبح في

use for

يستخدم لـ

put.. into

يضع في

made from

مصنوع من

sell at

يبيع في

Water sources

مصادر الماء

rain

مطر

river

نهر

well

بئر

water pump

مضخة مياه

stream

جدول مائي

tap

نقطة ماء

ocean

محيط

ground water

مياه جوفية

Resources

الموارد

Natural resources:

الموارد الطبيعية:

are materials or things we can find in nature. Trees and stone, are examples of natural resources.

هي مواد أو أشياء يمكننا أن نجدها في الطبيعة الأشجار والصخور أمثلة للموارد الطبيعية

Man-made resources:

الموارد البشرية

are materials or things that humans have made. Plastic bottles and cotton clothes are examples of man-made resources.

هي مواد أو أشياء صنعها الإنسان. الزجاجات البلاستيكية والملابس المصنوعة هي أمثلة على الموارد البشرية

Now read about Farouk. Underline the natural resources that he uses. Then circle the man-made resources that he uses.

Farouk is a farmer in Aswan. Every morning, he wakes up and puts on his galabeya and leather shoes. He boils some water for tea and eats some bread and fruit.

Because Farouk lives in Aswan, he knows that the sun will shine most days.

He is lucky that he lives on the fertile banks of the Nile so that he can use the water for his crops.

Today, Farouk is harvesting the grain, putting it into baskets made from reeds, and taking it to sell at the market.



فاروق مزارع من أسوان. كل صباح يستيقظ ويرتدي الجلابية وحذاءه الجلدي. يقوم بغلي بعض الماء لعمل الشاي ويأكل بعض الخبز والفاكهة.

لأن فاروق يعيش في أسوان، فهو يعلم أن الشمس سوف تسطع في معظم الأيام. إنه محظوظ لأنه يعيش على ضفاف النيل الخصبة مما يتيح له استخدام الماء لحاصيله.

واليوم يحصد فاروق القمح ويضعها في سلال مصنوعة من البوص يأخذها لبيعها في السوق.

Help your child learn about natural and man-made resources.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم الموارد الطبيعية والبشرية.

AL-BAHER - Connect (5) 215

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Now read about Reem. Underline the natural resources that she uses. Then circle the man-made resources that she uses.

Reem is going on vacation. She is traveling to Canada by plane. Today, she is packing her suitcase. She knows that there is often rain in Canada, so she is taking her umbrella. It can also be cold there, so she is packing a sweater. Reem loves swimming and asked her friend in Canada if there was a place she could swim. Her friend said she didn't live near the sea, but she could swim in a river or a lake if she wanted to.



ريم ذاهبة في إجازة. ستسافر إلى كندا بالطائرة واليوم تحزم حقيبتها وهي تعلم أنه غالباً ما تمطر في كندا، لذا فسوف تأخذ مظلتها. يمكن أيضاً أن يكون الجو بارداً هناك، لذا سوف تأخذ سترة. تحب ريم السباحة وسألت صديقتها في كندا عما إذا كان هناك مكان يمكنها السباحة فيه. قالت صديقتها إنها لا تعيش بالقرب من البحر، لكن يمكنها السباحة في نهر أو بحيرة إذا أرادت ذلك.

Activities

1 Listen and complete.

استمع وأكمل.

- 1 Reem is going on _____.
- 2 She is traveling to Canada by _____.
- 3 It is _____ in Canada, so she is packing her sweater.
- 4 She is taking her _____ as there is often rain.

اقرأ وصل.

2 Read and match.

- 1 Farouk is _____ at the market.
- 2 The sun will _____ to Canada by plane.
- 3 The farmer sells the baskets _____ a farmer in Aswan.
- 4 She is traveling _____ shine most days.

1- () 2- () 3- () 4- ()

3 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 _____ are natural resources.
a) Trees b) Bottles c) Bicycles d) Clothes
- 2 _____ is a man-made resource.
a) Bicycle b) Sand c) Water d) Gold
- 3 Gold is a _____ resources.
a) man-made b) human c) unnatural d) natural
- 4 He boils some _____ for tea.
a) oil b) gold c) fruit d) water
- 5 She is taking her _____. There is often rain.
a) ticket b) passport c) camera d) umbrella
- 6 The shoes are made of _____.
a) cotton b) leather c) wood d) metal
- 7 The sun will _____ most days.
a) grow b) shine c) play d) read
- 8 Farouk is _____ the grain.
a) playing b) harvesting c) reading d) running

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Farouk is a farmer in Aswan. Every morning, he wakes up and puts on his galabeya and leather shoes. He boils some water for tea and eats some bread and fruit. Because Farouk lives in Aswan, he knows that the sun will shine most days. He is lucky that he lives on the fertile banks of the Nile so that he can use the water for his crops.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1 Farouk puts on his
 a) T-shirt b) galabeya c) suit d) shirt
- 2 Bread and fruits are foods.
 a) unhealthy b) healthy c) awful d) careful

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 What does Farouk do?
- 4 Why do you think Farouk is lucky?

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

- 1 Aswan - a farmer - He - in - is - .
- 2 the stones - Are - man-made - natural - or - resources - ?

6 Write a paragraph of about (40) words.

اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

Natural resources

Guiding words:

(materials - nature - trees - sunlight - gold - water)

Lesson
(3)

A SPECIAL TRIP



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الرئيسية

traditional	تقليدي	daytrip	رحلة
stalls	أكشاك	handicrafts	أشغال يدوية
destination	وجهة مقصودة	diary	مذكرة / دفتر



Extra Vocabulary

الكلمات الإضافية

free time	وقت فراغ	Dead Sea	البحر الميت
citadel	قلعة	leaflet	كتيب - منشور
local	محلي	Roman Amphitheater	المنتدى الروماني
special day	يوم (خاص - مميز)	archaeological	أثري
rug	سجادة صغيرة	desert	صحراء
midnight	منتصف الليل	land	أرض
tour guide	مرشد سياحي	trading center	مركز تجاري



Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
arrive	يصل / arrived	find	يجد / found
check	يسجل / checked	buy	يشترى / bought
discover	يكتشف / discovered	spend	يقضي / spent
wander	يتجول / wandered	drive	يقود (سيارة) / drove

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

arrive in/at	يصل إلى	check in	يُستلم
head out of	يخرج من	float on	يسبح على
drive back to	يُركب عائدًا إلى	chance to	فرصة
reach destination	يصل إلى المكان المقصود	good for	جيد لـ / مفيد لـ
not long now	لم يبقَ وقتًا طويلاً	go shopping	يذهب للتسوق
wander through streets	يسير في الشوارع		

Listen and read the leaflet.

استمع واقرأ النشرة

How many museums can you visit on this trip?

DESERT TOURS TRIP TO JORDAN October 4-8 : < >

Day 1: Arrive in Amman and **check in** to our hotel in the middle of the city. Enjoy some free time in the city before meeting at the Memphis restaurant for a **traditional** Jordanian dinner in the evening.



اليوم الأول: الوصول إلى عمان والتسجيل في فندقنا في وسط المدينة. استمتع ببعض وقت الفراغ في المدينة قبل الالتقاء في مطعم ممفيس لتناول عشاء أردني تقليدي في المساء.

Day 2: Today we enjoy a tour of Amman. Visit the famous Amman Citadel before exploring the Roman Amphitheater and the Archaeological Museum. After a late lunch in a local restaurant, spend the afternoon and evening walking through Amman's many colorful markets.

اليوم الثاني: نستمتع اليوم بجولة في عمان. ونزور قلعة عمان الشهيرة قبل استكشاف المسرح الروماني المدرج والمتحف الأثري بعد تناول وجبة غداء في وقت متأخر في مطعم محلي. وقضينا فترة ما بعد الظهر والمساء في التجول في أسواق عمان العديدة الملونة.

Day 3: Today we head out of the city for a **daytrip** to As-Salt. About an hour away from Amman, in the ancient town of As-Salt you will find lots of local Jordanian culture. The markets are wonderful and there are many traditional arts and crafts to buy. We will visit the Abu Jaber Museum and discover the history of As-Salt as Jordan's important **trading center**.

اليوم الثالث: اليوم نخرج من المدينة في رحلة نهارية إلى السلت. على بعد حوالي ساعة من عمان. في بلدة السلت القديمة ستجد الكثير من الثقافة الأردنية المحلية الأصوات وأصنافها العديدة من الفنون والحرف اليدوية للشراء. سنزور متحف أبو جابر ونكتشف تاريخ السلت كمركز تجاري هام في الأردن.

Day 4: No visit to Jordan is complete without a trip to the Dead Sea. There is so much salt in this sea that you are able to float on the water! You can also enjoy the Dead Sea mud, which is very good for your skin.



اليوم الرابع: لا تكتمل زيارة الأردن بدون رحلة إلى البحر الميت. هناك الكثير جدًا من الملح في هذا البحر حتى أنه يمكنك أن تطفو على الماء! يمكنك أيضًا الاستمتاع بطين البحر الميت، وهو مفيد جدًا لبشرتك.

Day 5: After enjoying a relaxed breakfast, we leave at 11 am to drive three hours back to Amman. We will stop on the way for lunch before arriving at the airport at 5 pm.

اليوم الخامس: بعد الاستمتاع بوجبة فطور مريحة، سنغادر الساعة 11 صباحًا لنعود إلى عمان في رحلة تستغرق ثلاث ساعات. سنتوقف في الطريق لتناول الغداء قبل الوصول إلى المطار الساعة 5 مساءً.

Read again and decide if the sentences are True (T) or False (F).

- You visit As-Salt before you visit the Dead Sea.
- The Abu Jaber Museum is in Jordan's capital city.
- The Dead Sea mud is bad for your skin.

Help your child read and follow.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتابع.

Help your child read and follow.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتابع.

Tip

- A diary is a book in which you write down things that happen to you each day. A diary entry is a piece of writing in a diary.

المذكرة عبارة عن كتاب تدون فيه الأشياء التي تحدث لك كل يوم. مدخل المذكرة هو نموذج من الكتابة في مذكرة.

Read and follow.

اقرأ وتابع.

Thursday, October 6

Dear Sarah,

Today was the best day ever! I love anything to do with history - I always go to the museum at home, so today was a special day for me. The bus ride wasn't too bad. It only took an hour to reach our destination. I listened to music on the way and the time went quite quickly. When we arrived, we had the chance to wander through the streets and several people bought traditional Jordanian handicrafts from the stalls. I bought a lovely colorful rug. Saleh (our tour guide) was very kind and took it to the bus for me so that I didn't have to carry it around! That was lucky because I spent hours in the museum!

الخميس، ٦ أكتوبر

مذكرتي العزيزة

اليوم كان أفضل يوم على الإطلاق! أنا أحب أي شيء له علاقة بالتاريخ - وأذهب دائما إلى المتحف في بلدي. لذلك كان اليوم يوما مميزا بالنسبة لي. لم تكن رحلة الحافلة سيئة للغاية. استغرق الأمر ساعة واحدة فقط للوصول إلى وجهتنا. استمعنا إلى الموسيقى في الطريق ومر الوقت سريعا. عندما وصلنا، أتاحت لنا الفرصة للتحول في الشوارع واشتري العديد من الناس المصنوعات اليدوية الأردنية التقليدية من الأكشاك. واشتريت سجادة ملونة جميلة. كان صالح (مرشدنا السياحي) لطيفا جدا وأخذها إلى الحافلة من أجلي حتى لا اضطر إلى حملها! كان ذلك من حسن الحظ لأنني قضيت ساعات في المتحف!

Language Focus

Prepositions of Time

حرفي ظرف الزمان

in

on

at

in

months

seasons

years

in

the morning

the afternoon

the evening

e.g. Grandma was born in 1962. - I go to Alex in summer.

e.g. It was warm in October. - He is active in the morning.

e.g. They arrived in the morning.

on

days of the week

special days

specific dates

أيام الأسبوع

أيام مناسبات

تواريخ محددة

On Saturday.

On my birthday.

On June 26th.

e.g. I go swimming on Mondays.

e.g. I am having a party on my birthday.

e.g. I was born on July 6th 2010.

at

times

night

lunchtime

الوقت (الزمن)

ليلاً

وقت الغذاء

e.g. Our flight lands at 8 pm.

e.g. I go to bed at night.

e.g. We play basketball at lunchtime.

Help your child practice using prepositions of time.

ساعد طفلك أن يتدرب على استخدام حروف جر الزمان.

Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختتر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 Dad is a baker. He works the mornings.
a) in b) on c) at d) under
- 2 We go to the club Saturday.
a) in b) on c) above d) at
- 3 Does our next class start 2 pm?
a) at b) in c) of d) on
- 4 Grandma was born 1962.
a) in b) on c) at d) under

Listen and read

استمع واقرأ.

Narrator : 1

Boy 1 : Hi Ayman, do you want to play basketball after school on Thursday?

مرحباً أيمن، هل ترغب في لعب كرة السلة بعد المدرسة يوم الخميس؟

Ayman : On Thursday? I'm sorry, I can't, I go swimming on Thursdays.

يوم الخميس؟ أسف، لا أستطيع، أنا أذهب للسباحة أيام الخميس.

Narrator : 2

Girl 1 : Hello Amira, shall we go shopping on the weekend?

مرحباً أميرة، هل سنذهب للتسوق في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع؟

Amira : Yes please, that sounds good!

نعم من فضلك، هذا يبدو جيداً!

Narrator : 3

Dad : Fareed, remember you have a dentist's appointment this afternoon.

مريد، تذكر أن عندك موعد مع طبيب الأسنان بعد الظهر.

Fareed : Oh yes, it's at five o'clock, isn't it?

أوه، نعم، إنه في الساعة الخامسة، أليس كذلك؟

Dad : Yes, that's right.

نعم، هذا صحيح.

Fareed : OK, thanks Dad.

تمام، شكرًا يا أبي.

Narrator : 4

Mom : Talia, our flight leaves at 11 am.

تاليا، ستغادر رحلتنا الجوية الساعة 11 صباحًا.

Talia : Ok Mom, I'll be ready

حسنًا يا أمي، ساكون جاهزة.

Narrator : 5

Sherif : Mom, remember I'm playing football with Ramy in the morning.

أمي، تذكرني أنني سألعب كرة القدم مع رامي في الصباح.

Mom : Oh, yes, that's fine Sherif. Thanks for reminding me.

نعم، هذا جيد يا شريف، شكرًا لتذكيري.

Narrator : 6

Sara : Mom, when are we visiting Grandma and Grandpa?

أمي، متى سنزور الجد والجدة؟

Mom : We're going in July, Sara. Not long now.

سنذهب في شهر يوليو، يا سارة. لم يتبقى وقت طويل الآن.



Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

1 No visit to Jordan is complete without a trip to the Dead Sea.

2 There is much salt in the Dead Sea.

3 You can enjoy the Dead Sea mud.

4 The Dead Sea mud is bad for your skin.

2 Read and match.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|---|
| 1 How many museums | a) on my birthday. |
| 2 I would like to visit Zambia | b) to Canada by plane. |
| 3 I am having a party | c) because I want to see elephants and lions. |
| 4 We are travelling | d) can you visit on this trip? |

3 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1 Monday, we arrived in Amman. اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

a) In b) On c) Of d) At

2 The flight landed 4 o'clock.

a) at b) on c) in d) above

3 We visit our cousins July.

a) in b) on c) off d) at

4 Amman is a really busy city night.

a) in b) at c) on d) of

5 They arrived the afternoon.

a) in b) on c) at d) above

6 We go to the restaurant for a dinner in the evening.

a) evening b) traditions c) morning d) traditional

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

1 you - like - What - visit - country - would - to - ?

2 would - I - like - to - Zambia - visit - .

3 go - We - to - club - the - Saturdays - on - .

5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Today we head out of the city for a day trip to As-Salt. About an hour away from Amman. In the ancient town of As-Salt, you will find lots of local Jordanian culture. The markets are wonderful and there are many traditional arts and crafts to buy. We will visit the Abu Jaber Museum and discover the history of As-Salt as Jordan's important trading center.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1 The opposite of the underlined word "ancient" is

a) good b) bad c) modern d) old

2 As-Salt is about a/an away from Amman.

a) hour b) day c) month d) year

B) Answer the following questions.

3 What will you find in the markets?

4 What will you discover there?

6 Write a paragraph of about (40) words.

اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

A trip to Jordan

Guiding words:

(best - special day - bus - wander - bought - handicrafts - tour guide - museum)

Lesson (4)

AI-AZHAR PARK

Vocabulary كلمات

go on vacation	يذهب في إجازة	picnic	نزهة / وجبة في الهواء الطلق
ill	مريض	awesome	مدهش / رائع
a show	عرض	bench	مقعد
Al-Azhar Park	حديقة الأزهر	possible	ممکن

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past
shout	shouted يصرخ
agree	agreed يوافق
seem	seemed يبدو

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past
go	went يذهب
sit	sat يجلس
feel	felt يشعر

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

school was over	انتهت الدراسة	at the beach	عند الشاطئ
at the end of...	في نهاية...	a group of...	مجموعة من...
stay at	يمكن في	have a meal	تناول وجبة
feel a bit low	يشعر بمزاج سيئ	make a picnic	بعد وجبة

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson 4

استمع واقرأ.

Listen and read

Why did Seleem feel better at the end of the story?

Seleem was feeling sad. It was a hot summer, school was over and he wanted to go on vacation. His cousin Sherif was away at the beach and Seleem wanted to be there too. His family usually went on vacation with Sherif's family, but this year that wasn't possible - Seleem's dad had a new job and they had to stay in Cairo.



كان سليم يشعر بالحزن. كان صيفًا حارًا. وانتهت الدراسة وأراد سليم أن يذهب في إجازة. فكان ابن عمه شريف مسافرًا عند الشاطئ وأراد سليم أن يكون هناك أيضًا عادة ما كانت عائلته تذهب في إجازة مع عائلة شريف، لكن هذا العام لم يكن ذلك ممكنًا - والد سليم حظى بوظيفة جديدة واضطروا للبقاء في القاهرة.

Marwan, his friend, phoned him, "Hey, how are you, Seleem?", "I'm feeling a bit low - I want to be at the beach," said Seleem.

اتصل به صديقه مروان قائلاً: "مرحبًا، كيف حالك يا سليم؟" قال سليم: "أشعر بمزاج سيئ قليلًا. أريد أن أكون على الشاطئ."

"Well, this year you can't go, so let's find something else to do!" said Marwan. "I know, let's go to Al-Azhar Park." حسنا. هذا العام لا يمكنك الذهاب إليه، لذا دعنا نجد شيئًا آخر لنفعله! أنا أعرف. هيا نذهب إلى حديقة الأزهر. "Hmm," said Seleem. "I don't know it, but it sounds interesting!"

قال سليم: "همم. لا أعرف، ولكن يبدو ذلك مثيرًا للاهتمام!"

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

AL-BAHER - Connect (5) 229

Seleem's mom agreed to take them to the park. She made a picnic, so when they arrived, they sat under a big tree on the cool green grass and enjoyed their food. It was such a beautiful day, and Marwan and Seleem played football. Suddenly Ramy and Maged, their friends from school, came running past.

العشب الأخضر الجميل واستمتعوا بطعامهم. كان يوماً جميلاً، ولعب مروان وسليم كرة القدم. وفجأة جاء رامي ومaged، أصدقاءهما من المدرسة، راكضين.

"Hi Ramy!" shouted Seleem. "Why are you in the city? I thought you were at the beach!"

صاح سليم: "مرحباً رامي! لماذا أنت في المدينة؟ اعتقدت أنك كنت عند الشاطئ!"

"No," said Ramy. "My grandma's ill so Mom wanted to stay in Cairo. There's a whole group of us who stayed at home and didn't travel. Can you come to the playground with us?" Seleem asked his mom and they all went together to the playground. Mom sat on a bench and enjoyed all the beautiful plants and birds in the park.

قال رامي: "لا،" قالت رامي: "أمي مريضة، لذلك أرادت أن تبقى في القاهرة. هناك مجموعة كاملة منا بقيت في البيت ولم نركب. هل يمكنك أن تأتي إلى الملعب معنا؟" استأذن سليم من أمه وذهبوا جميعاً معاً إلى الملعب. جلست الأم على مقعد واستمتعت بكل النباتات والطيور الجميلة في الحديقة.

"I think this is a fantastic place," said Mom at the end of the afternoon. "I can see there's a show next week. Let's come back with Dad, see the show, and have a meal at the restaurant." Seleem felt very happy - now he knew his friends were in town and they had a wonderful park. It seemed that summer in the city would be **awesome!**

قالت أمي في نهاية فترة ما بعد الظهر: "أعتقد أن هذا مكان رائع. أستطيع أن أرى أن هناك عرضاً الأسبوع المقبل. دعنا نعود مع أبيك ونرى العرض، ونتناول وجبة في المطعم. شعر سليم بسعادة كبيرة. الآن عرف أن أصدقاءه في المدينة وبها حديقة رائعة. يبدو أن الصيف في المدينة سيكون رائعاً."

PRONUNCIATION

Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

(th) /θ/



mouth
فم



south
جنوب



birthday
يوم ميلاد



Earth
كوكب الأرض

- To make the /θ/ sound, press your tongue against your top teeth.
لنطق الصوت /θ/ نضغط باللسان على الأسنان العليا.
- It is **unvoiced**, which means you should feel some air on your hand when you say it.
وهو صوت غير جهوري، وهذا يعني أنه يجب الشعور بهواء في اليد عند نطقه.

(th) /ð/



mother
الأم



father
الأب



leather
جلد



bathroom
الحمام

- To make the /ð/ sound, press your tongue against your top teeth.
لنطق الصوت /ð/ نضغط باللسان على الأسنان العليا.
- There's no air, but you can feel a vibration on your neck.
لا تخرج في نطقه هواء ولكن تشعر باهتزاز في الرقبة.

th /ð/

thing

think

author

Earth

thousand

three

this

these

those

with

other

they

th /ð/

هذا (للمفرد القريب)

هؤلاء (للجميع القريب)

أولئك (للجميع البعيد)

مع

أخرى / آخر

هم

- Add these words to the correct column. أضيف الكلمات إلى العمود الصحيح.
(mouth - other - bathroom - Earth - father - with)

/θ/

/ð/

Suffix

اللاحقة

➔ Suffix is a letter or group of letters added to the end of a word to make another word.

اللاحقة هي حرف أو مجموعة حروف تضاف إلى نهاية كلمة لتكون كلمة أخرى

dangerous	خطير	creative	مبدع
-ous famous	مشهور	-ive expensive	غالي الثمن
enormous	ضخم	active	نشط

Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

- Be careful! That snake is **poisonous**.
- Ali swims and runs. He's very **active**.
- Everyone knows Soha. She is very **famous**.
- His watch is very **expensive**.

Help your child recognize the adjective suffixes.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على اللاحقات تكون صفات.

MATH



A triangle: is a 2D shape with three sides.

المثلث: هو شكل ثنائي الأبعاد بثلاث أضلاع.

Triangles

المثلثات



An equilateral triangle

مثلث متساوي الأضلاع



An isosceles triangle

مثلث متساوي الساقين



A right angle triangle

مثلث قائم الزاوية



A scalene triangle

مثلث مختلف الأضلاع

An equilateral triangle: has three equal sides.

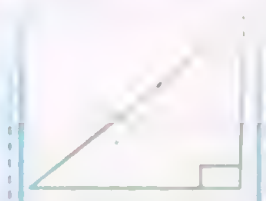
المثلث متساوي الأضلاع: له ٣ أضلاع متساوية.



An equilateral

A right angle triangle: has one angle that measures (90°).

المثلث قائم الزاوية: به زاوية قياسها (٩٠°).



A right angle

Help your child learn about different types of triangles.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على أنواع المثلثات المختلفة.

An isosceles triangle: has two sides of equal length.

المثلث منساوي الساقين: به ضلعان متساويان في الطول.



An isosceles

A scalene triangle: has three sides of different length.

المثلث مختلف الأضلاع: به ٣ أضلاع مختلفة الطول.



A scalene

1 Read and number.

- 1 An equilateral has three equal sides.
- 2 A right angle has one angle that measures (90°) .
- 3 An isosceles has two sides of equal length.
- 4 A scalene triangle has three sides of different length.



اقرأ ورقم.

2 Circle the correct triangle type.

دو نوع المثلث الصحيح.



(scalene - right angle)



(isosceles - right angle)



(equilateral - scalene)



(scalene - isosceles)



Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

- 1 Seleem was feeling happy.
- 2 It was cold in summer.
- 3 Seleem wanted to go on vacation.
- 4 Seleem's family usually went on vacation with Sherif's family.

2 Read and match. اقرأ وصل.

- 1 He wasn't at school because a) is poisonous.
- 2 Be careful! That snake b) very expensive.
- 3 Everyone knows her. c) She is very famous.
- 4 Ali's watch is d) he was on vacation.

3 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 An equilateral triangle has _____ equal sides.
a) 2 b) 3 c) 4 d) 5
- 2 A right angle triangle has 1 angle that measures _____ degrees.
a) 80° b) 70° c) 90° d) 60°
- 3 An isosceles triangle has two sides of _____ length.
a) different b) equal c) simple d) easy
- 4 Everyone knows Soha, she is _____.
a) fame b) famous c) shame d) side

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Seleem was feeling sad. He wanted to go on vacation. But Seleem's dad had a new job and they had to stay in Cairo. His friend Marwan suggested going to Al-Azhar Park. Seleem's mother took them to the park. She made a picnic. They sat under the tree and had their food.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1 At first, Seleem was feeling
a) happy b) sad c) delighted d) pleased
- 2 They had their food under the
a) restaurant b) hotel c) grass d) tree

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 Who had a new job?
- 4 Where did Marwan suggest going to?

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

- 1 are - you - Why - the - in - city - ?
- 2 watch His - expensive - is - very - .
- 3 has - An equilateral - equal - three - sides - triangle - .

6 Write a paragraph of about (40) words.

اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

Al-Azhar Park

Guiding words:

place vacation - fantastic - picnic - football - plants -
birds - awesome - Cairo)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lessons (5&6)

-Writing - Project



Vocabulary

المعاني

sights	مناظر خلابة	metal	معدن
garden	حديقة	market place	مكان التسوق
Marrakech	مراكش (المغرب)	Eiffel Tower	برج إيفل
snorkelling	العطس بالنوب تنفس	brightly-colored	ألوان رائعة
race	سباق	sand dunes	كثبان رملية
beach buggies	عربات الشاطئ	Louvre Museum	متحف اللوفر



Conjugation of verbs

تصرف الأفعال

Present	Past	Present	Past
remind	يذكر reminded	understand	يفهم understood
make	يصنع made	keep up	يلاحق kept up

Read the diary entries

اقرأ المفكرات اليومية.

Dear Diary,

July 21st

Reem

I had such a cool day today. I went on the river. We saw some famous sights from the boat, like the Louvre, a beautiful museum with fantastic paintings, and the Eiffel Tower.

The Eiffel Tower is really tall and made of metal. I tried to speak French, but I couldn't really say anything. But the French people were very kind and when I spoke English, they understood me! At the end of the day we went to a French restaurant and had a wonderful meal with potatoes. It was a special day.

مفكرتي العزيزة

لقد قضيت يوماً رائعاً اليوم. ذهبت إلى النهر. شاهدنا بعض المعالم السياحية الشهيرة من القارب. مثل متحف اللوفر. وهو متحف جميل به لوحات رائعة. وبرج إيفل. برج إيفل طويل جداً ومصنوع من المعدن. حاولت التحدث باللغة الفرنسية. ولكن لم أستطع حقاً قول أي شيء. لكن الفرنسيين كانوا طيبين جداً وعندما تحدثت بالإنجليزية فهموني! في نهاية اليوم ذهبنا إلى مطعم فرنسي وتناولنا وجبة رائعة مع البطاطس. لقد كان يوماً مميزاً.

Help your child read the diary entries.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ المفكرات اليومية.

April 5th

Amira

Dear Diary,

I love this city! There's so much to do. Today we went to Ali Ben Youssef Madrasa, a beautiful museum that is 800 years old! We went early in the morning, but it was still very busy with people. We also visited Jardin Majorelle, a lovely garden where we had a picnic. I like it there because it reminds me a bit of Al-Azhar Park at home. But my favorite place is Jemaa el-Fnaa, the market place. The smells coming from the market stalls make me hungry! I had a sandwich yesterday. I can't wait to go back there tomorrow!

مفكرتي العزيرة.

أنا أحب المدينة! هناك الكثير للقيام به. ذهبنا اليوم إلى مدرسة علي بن يوسف وهي متحف جميل عمره 800 عام! ذهبنا في الصباح الباكر، لكنه كان لا يزال مزدحمًا جدًا بالناس. وزرنا أيضًا حديقة ماجوريل، وهي حديقة جميلة حيث قمنا بنزهة فيها. يعجبني المكان هناك لأنه يذكرني قديمًا بحديقة الأزهر في الوطن. لكن المكان المفضل لدي هو جامع الفناء، وهو السوق. الروائح القادمة من أكشاك السوق تجعلني أشعر بالجوع! تناوليت ساندوتشًا بالأمس. لا أطيع الانتظار للعودة إلى هناك غدًا!

Note:

When you write a diary remember to:

عندما تكتب مفكرة، تذكر أن:

- 1 Write the date.
- 2 Start with "Dear Diary".
- 3 Describe the places / events.
- 4 Say how you feel.

اكتب التاريخ.

تبدأ بـ "مفكرتي العزيرة".

صف الأماكن والأحداث.

تقول ما تشعر به.

Help your child read the diary entries.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ المفكرات اليومية.

Do you want to go on this vacation?

My perfect vacation

عطلتي المثالية

Day 1

In the morning, we go to the beach to go snorkeling. Swim with the turtles and brightly-colored fish! The afternoon can be spent on the beach with a picnic and a good book.



اليوم الأول: في الصباح نذهب إلى الشاطئ للغطس. نسبح مع السلاحف والأسماك ذات الألوان الزاهية! يمكن قضاء فترة ما بعد الظهر على الشاطئ مع وجبة في الهواء الطلق وكتاب جيد.

Day 2

Today we race through the sand dunes in beach buggies! It's fun and fast!



Can you keep up?

اليوم الثاني: اليوم نتسابق عبر الكثبان الرملية في عربات الشاطئ! إنها ممتعة وسريعة! هل يمكنك اللحاق بنا؟

Day 3

Spend a relaxed day shopping and wandering through the markets. Perhaps buy some traditional handicrafts to take home.



اليوم الثالث: أقضي يوم استرخاء في التسوق والتجول في الأسواق. ربما نشترى بعض المصنوعات اليدوية التقليدية لنأخذها عند العودة إلى الوطن.

Day 4

Learn about the city's cultural past with a trip to the museum today. In the evening, we go to a traditional restaurant where you can see the chef making the local dishes.



اليوم الرابع: نتعرف على الماضي الثقافي للمدينة برحلة إلى المتحف اليوم. في المساء، نذهب إلى مطعم تقليدي حيث يمكنك رؤية الشيف وهو يعد الأطباق المحلية.

Help your child identify how to write an ad for a vacation destination.

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب إعلانًا لمكان إجازة.



Activities

1 Listen and complete.

استمع وأكمل.

- 1 In the morning, we go to the _____ to go snorkelling.
- 2 _____ with the turtles and brightly-colored fish.
- 3 The _____ can be spent on the beach with a picnic.
- 4 Today we _____ through the sand dunes in beach buggies.

2 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 _____ the morning, we go to the beach to go snorkeling.
- a) In b) On c) At d) Of
- 2 You can see the _____ making the local dishes.
- a) teacher b) chef c) vet d) tourist
- 3 The Eiffel Tower is made of _____.
- a) glass b) metal c) wood d) plastic
- 4 Marrakech is a/an _____ city.
- a) bad b) awful c) busy d) sad

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

love - I - this - city - .

saw famous - We - sights - some - .

you - Do - go - to - want - vacation - this - on - ?

's - fast - It - fun - and - .

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

I had such a cool day today. I went on the river. We saw some famous sights from the boat, like the Louvre, a beautiful museum with fantastic paintings, and the Eiffel Tower. The Eiffel Tower is really tall. It is made of metal. I tried to speak French, but I couldn't really say anything. But the French people were very kind and when I spoke English, they understood me. At the end of the day, we went to a French restaurant and had a wonderful meal with potatoes. It was a special day.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1 The underlined pronoun "It" refers to the _____.
- a) Morocco b) pyramid c) Eiffel Tower d) Cairo Tower
- 2 We saw some famous sights from the _____.
- a) boat b) car c) bus d) plane

B) Answer the following questions.

- 1 What is the Eiffel Tower made of?
- 2 Where did you have a meal with potatoes?

5 Write a diary entries about.

اكتب مفكرة يومية عن.

"A special day on vacation"

Guiding questions:

- When was it?
- What did you see?
- Where did you go?
- What did you do?

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Review on Unit (12)



Vocabulary

كلمات

Travel

السفر

hotel	فندق	camera	كاميرا	swimming pool	حمام سباحة
ticket	تذكرة	passport	جواز سفر	the theme park	ملاهي
city	مدينة كبيرة	museum	متحف	sunglasses	نظارة شمسية
beach	شاطئ	tourist	سائح	suitcase	حقيرة سفر

Resources

المواد

Natural

stones	حجارة
sunlight	ضوء الشمس
gold	ذهب
sand	رمل
fruit	فاكهة
reeds	قصب / بوص

man-made

plastic	بلاستيك
galabeya	جلابية
leather	جلد
bread	خبز
bottle	زجاجة
basket	سلة

Other words

كلمات أخرى

desert	صحراء	land	يهبط / اليابسة
materials	مواد خام	nutrients	عناصر غذائية
traditional	تقليدي	daytrip	رحلة اليوم الواحد
wander	يتجول	handicrafts	حرف يدوية
stall	كشك	bench	مقعد

Help your child revise unit (12).

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الثانية عشر.

Review on Unit

12

Phonics

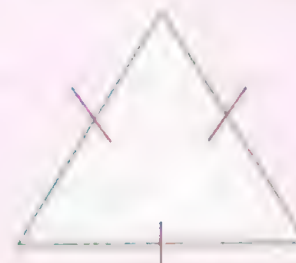
صوتيات

(th)	/θ/	(th)	/ð/
mouth	فم	thing	شيء
south	جنوب	Thursday	الخميس
birth	عيد ميلاد	think	يفكر
bath	حمام	three	ثلاثة
Earth	الأرض	brother	أخ
		other	آخر
		father	أب
		mother	أم
		leather	جلد
		those	هؤلاء
		with	مع
		they	هم
		this	هذا
		these	هؤلاء
		those	هؤلاء

Math

Triangles

المثلثات



An equilateral triangle
مثلث متساوي الأضلاع



An isosceles triangle
مثلث متساوي الساقين



A right angle triangle
مثلث قائم الزاوية



A scalene triangle
مثلث مختلف الأضلاع

- I go swimming on Mondays.
- We play basketball at lunchtime.
- We visit our cousins in June.

Help your child revise unit (12).

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الثانية عشر.

Writing Corner

1 Write a paragraph of about (40) words. اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

"A trip"

Last summer, I went to a trip, I went with my family. We went to Singapore. We had got a lovely hotel room. The view was beautiful and we could see the beach. Singapore is a wonderful city. There are lots of high-rise buildings, but there are also many parks, gardens, and trees to sit under and relax. The Bay is a really special place. It was great.

"Al-Azhar Park"

Al-Azhar Park is in Cairo. I went on vacation to Al-Azhar Park. Our mom made a picnic, so we sat under a big tree on the cool grass and enjoyed our food. It was such a beautiful day. We played football. Mom sat on a bench and enjoyed all the beautiful plants and birds in the park. I think this is a fantastic place.

2 Write a diary entry about Reem's day. اكتب مفكرة يومية عن يوم ريم.

July 21st

Reem

Dear Diary,

I had such a cool day today. I went on the river. We saw some famous sights from the boat, like the Louvre, a beautiful museum with fantastic paintings, and the Eiffel Tower. The Eiffel Tower is really tall and made of metal. I tried to speak French, but I couldn't really say anything. But the French people were very kind and when I spoke English, they understood me! At the end of the day we went to a French restaurant and had a wonderful meal with potatoes. It was a special day.

Dictation on Unit (12)

Lesson (1)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	شاطئ		كاميرا
	مدينة كبيرة		جواز سفر
	فندق		نظارة شمس
	متحف		تذكرة
	حمام سباحة		حقيبة

Lesson (2)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	موارد من صنع الانسان		موارد طبيعية
	ملابس		أشجار
	دراجة		حجارة
	بالاستيك		شمس

Lesson (3)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	رحلة يوم		تقليدي
	مصنوعات يدوية		يتجول
	مرشد سياحي		جولة سياحية

Lesson (4)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	مقعد		إجازة
	نزهة		ممكّن
	جميل		يوم ميلاد

Lessons (5 & 6)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	مناظر		مزدحم
	معدن		سباق
	طباخ		عربات الشاطئ

Activities on Unit (12)

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

- 1 Farouk is a vet.
- 2 He lives in Aswan.
- 3 The sun doesn't shine in Aswan.
- 4 The banks of the Nile are fertile.

☐
☐
☐
☐

2 Listen and complete. استمع وأكمل.

- 1 Today we head out of the city for a
- 2 As-Salt is about an hour from
- 3 The markets are full of traditional arts and to buy.
- 4 We will visit the Abu Jaber

3 Read and match. اقرأ وصل.

- | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1 You need a passport | a) three sides of different length. |
| 2 Is your birthday | b) in the park. |
| 3 An equilateral triangle | c) to travel to a different country. |
| 4 They ate on the grass | d) has three equal sides. |
| | e) on Friday? |

1- () 2- () 3- () 4- ()

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

On Monday, we arrived in Amman. The flight landed at 4 o'clock in the afternoon. It was about 26 degrees and I was surprised that it was so warm in October. We went to our hotel and checked in. Our room was very comfortable. Later that evening, we had dinner at the Memphis restaurant in the city center. Amman is a really busy city at night. We walked around the markets and bought some traditional handicrafts. We went back to our hotel at about midnight.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1 On, we arrived in Amman.
a) weekend b) Monday c) Tuesday d) Sunday
- 2 Amman is really a city at night.
a) free b) busy c) not crowded d) ugly

B) Answer the following questions.

- 1 What do you think of the weather in Amman?
.....
- 2 Where did the writer have dinner?
.....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة.

- 1 birthday - Reem's - December - on - is - 5th - .
.....

- 2 last - visit - Did - Al-Azhar Park - night - you - ?
.....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

3 is - She - on - going - vacation - .

country - like - What - visit - to - would - you - ?

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

⇒ farouk is a farmer in aswan.

⇒ how many museums can you visit on this trip

7 Write a paragraph of about (40) words.

اكتب فقرة من (10) كلمة.

"Water sources"

Guiding words:

(rain - river - lake - water pump - stream - ocean)

Activities on Units (10 - 12)

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

1 We arrived in Alexandria on Friday.

2 We visited some museums and the theatre.

3 The city was very busy.

4 We had a boring tour.

2 Listen and complete.

استمع وأكمل.

1 I pack good _____ and a sun hat.

2 We have _____ for many hours every day.

3 There are unusual _____ and trees to see.

4 I saw a _____ and a wild cat.

3 Read and match.

اقرأ وصل.

1 Don't make noise

2 when I arrive in London.

2 I will send you another email

3 does his homework carefully.

3 My brother usually

4 inside the school library.

4 Tourists like to wander

5 through the streets of Khan Al-Khalili.

5 Mom and dad

6 went on a desert hike.

7 we had a boring tour.

1-() 2-() 3-() 4-() 5-()

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

When I was on vacation, I went to a camp where boys and girls look at the stars. At the campsite a boy named Jason was setting up his tent. I asked him what he was learning about the stars. He said "I'm learning their names and how to read a star map. The best time to look at the stars is late at night, when it's clear and not cloudy."

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1 Jason went to the on vacation.
a) library b) camp c) museum d) school
- 2 Jason was setting his tent.
a) in b) on c) up d) under

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 What was Jason doing at the campsite?
.....
- 4 When is the best time to see the stars?
.....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

- 1 mustn't - You - park - places - wrong - in - .

- 2 fast - you - Can - swim - ?

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

- 3 flew - We - to - on - Alexandria - Monday - .

- 4 you - want - Do - vacation - go - to - on - ?

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- we shouldn't read other people's diaries

- what can you do there

7 Write a paragraph of about (40) words.

اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

"Sharm El-Sheikh"

Guiding questions:

- 1- Where is it?
2- What can you do there?
3- Why do tourists like it?
4- Why do you like it?

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

A FANTASTIC FAMILY ADVENTURE

مغامرة عائلية رائعة



BY NICOLA GARDNER
ILLUSTRATED BY NATHALIE ORTEGA

The
Story

A FANTASTIC FAMILY
ADVENTURE

The Characters



Dad



Mom



Romy



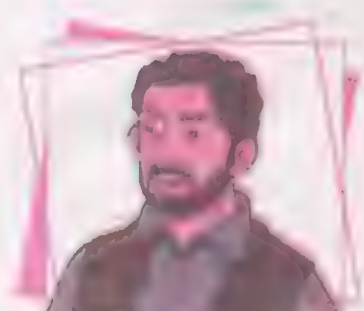
Grandma



Uncle Youssaf



Romy



Uncle Youssaf



Help your child identify the characters of the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على شخصيات القصة.

Picture Dictionary

dinosaur
ديناصور



Dinosaurs were very big animals which lived millions of years ago.

كانت الديناصورات حيوانات ضخمة جدًا والتي عاشت منذ ملايين السنين.

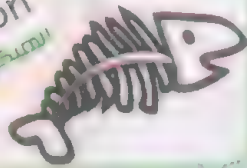
Our body has many bones to help us stand up.

جسمنا به عظام كثيرة تساعدنا على الوقوف.



bones
عظام

skeleton
الهيكلة العظمية



Fish and other animals have a skeleton made of bones inside their bodies.

الأسماك والحيوانات الأخرى لها هيكل يتكون من العظام داخل أجسامهم.

Animals' feet leave tracks on the ground where they walked.

ترك أقدام الحيوانات أثرا على الأرض حيث مشيت.



tracks
أثار الأقدام

binoculars
المصطار



She likes looking at things in the distance with her binoculars.

إنها تحب النظر إلى الأشياء من على بعد بواسطة مصطارها.

An ibex is a type of desert animals like a gazelle.

الوعل هو أحد أنواع الحيوانات الصحراوية مثل الغزال.



ibex
الوعل

archaeologist
علم الآثار



An archaeologist is someone who digs underground to find objects from many years ago and studies them.

علم الآثار هو الشخص الذي يحفر تحت الأرض ليجد على أشياء منذ سنين عديدة ويبحثها.

An archaeological dig is when people work together to find something under the ground.

الحفر الأثري عندما يعمل الناس سوياً للعثور على شيء ما تحت الأرض.

archaeological dig

حفر أثري



The Beginning

The skeleton of a dinosaur

الهيكلة العظمية لديناصور



Ramy and Malak are playing in the yard. Suddenly Dad calls them from the house. "Hey kids, come and see this story in the newspaper!"

The children run inside to see. Dad says, "Look. They found something amazing near Grandma and Grandpa's village."

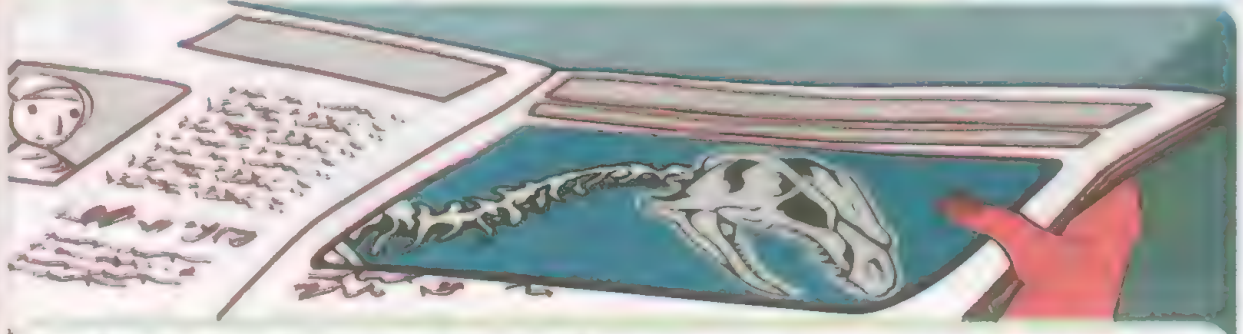
"What is it, Dad?" asks Ramy. "It looks scary!"

Dad says, "No Ramy, it's not scary at all. It's the skeleton of a dinosaur."

A group of archaeologists found it. And your uncle Youssef is one of those archaeologists!"

يلعب رامى وملاك في الحديقة. فجأة ينادى عندهم الوالد من المنزل "هيا يا أطفال، تعالوا وانظروا إلى هذه القصة في الجريدة". جرى الأطفال إلى الداخل ليرؤا. قال الأب: "انظروا، وجدوا شيئاً مذهلاً بالقرب من قرية الجد والجدة." "يسأل رامى: "ما هذا الشيء يا أبي، إنه يبدو مخيفاً".

يقول الأب: "لا يا رامى، إنه ليس مخيفاً على الإطلاق! إنه هيكل عظمي لديناصور. مجموعة من علماء الآثار عثروا عليه. وعمكم يوسف أحد هؤلاء العلماء."



"That's awesome, Dad!" says Malak. "The dinosaur skeleton is really old, isn't it?" "Yes, that's right, Malak." says Dad. "It's about 98 million years old!" "Wow! Uncle Youssef has got a really interesting job, hasn't he?" says Ramy. "Yes, he has. And his work is important too. It helps us learn about the past." says Dad.

تقول ملك: "هذا مدهل يا أبي. أن الهيكل العظمي لهذا الديناصور حقاً قديم، أليس كذلك؟" يقول الأب: "هذا صحيح يا ملك. إن عمره تقريباً ٩٨ مليون عاماً".

يقول رامى: "واو، إن عمي يوسف لديه وظيفة شيقة حقاً، أليس كذلك؟" يقول الأب: "نعم، كذلك. وعمله مهم أيضاً. فعمله يساعدنا أن نتعلم عن الماضي."

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



Later that evening Ramy and his family are having dinner.
Dad says, "Do you want to go there the next time we go to Grandma's house?"
Ramy says, "That's a great idea, Dad. It would be an adventure to go into the desert!"
Mom says, "There's a beautiful nature trail there. Why don't we walk that together?"
"Oh yes please, Mom! I love nature," says Malak.

"وكان رامي وأسرته يتناولون العشاء في وقت متأخر من ذلك المساء."
يقول الأب: "هل تريدون الذهاب هناك المرة القادمة عندما نذهب إلى منزل الجدة؟"
يقول رامي: "إنها فكرة رائعة يا أبي. ستكون مغامرة أن نذهب إلى الصحراء!"
تقول الأم: "يوجد متنزه طبيعي جميل هناك. لم لا نتمشي هناك عليه سوياً؟"
تقول ملك: "أوه نعم من فضلك يا أمي! أنا أحب الطبيعة."



"Ramy! Malak!" Grandma calls. She is so excited to see her grandchildren.
"I have prepared your favorite things - feteer and mint tea! Come inside and eat."
"Hello," says Grandpa to Mom and Dad. "It's so good to see you."
"It's lovely to be here," says Dad. "Tomorrow we want to take the children on a nature trail."
"Excellent," says Grandpa. "There's lots to see in our area. It's a beautiful place."

نادى الجدة "رامي! ملك!" فهي سعيدة جداً لرؤية أحفادها. وقالت: "لقد أعددت لكما الأشياء التي تفضلونها - الفطير والشاي بالنعناع! هيا إلى الداخل لتتناولا الطعام."
يقول الجد لأبي ولأمي: "مرحباً، إنه لشيء رائع جداً أن أراكما." قال أبي: "إنه شيء جميل أن نكون هنا." "نريد غداً أن نأخذ الأطفال في جولة في الطبيعة." قال الجد: "ممتاز." "فهناك الكثير لنراه في منطقتنا. إنه مكان جميل!"

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتابع أحداث القصة.



Activities

1 Read and write (T) True or (F) false.

اقرأ واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

Ramy and Malak are playing in the yard.

Archaeologists found the skeleton of an ibex in grandparents' village.

Uncle Youssef is an archaeologist.

The family will take the children on a nature trail.

2 Complete the following sentences.

أكمل الجمل الآتية.

Dad sees the story about the dinosaur skeleton in the _____.

The dinosaur skeleton is near grandparents' _____.

Uncle Youssef is an _____.

Grandma is so _____ to see her grandchildren.

3 Answer the following questions.

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية.

Where did "Dad" see the story?

What did the archaeologists find near the village?

How do the archaeologists help us?

What did "Grandma" prepare for the grandchildren?

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



The next morning everyone is happy. They are ready to walk the nature trail. They are wearing hats, scarves, and sunglasses. They have snacks and water in their backpacks. Mom has some **binoculars** too. She wants to look at the amazing birds that live here. They are in a beautiful part of Egypt with many types of **rare animals**.

كان الجميع سعيداً في الصباح التالي. هم مستعدون لـ المشي على المسار الطبيعي. هم يرتدون أقبعة، وشال، ونظارات شمسية. هم يحملون وجبات خفيفة ومياه في حقائبهم. أمهم لديها أيضاً **مقرنة** أيضاً. هي تريد أن تنظر الطيور النادرة التي تعيش هنا. هم في مكان رائع في مصر مع الكثير من الحيوانات النادرة.



It's a lovely warm day, not too hot. It's a perfect day for walking. There are cactus plants and palm trees and they see sheep and some camels. Malak is very pleased because she loves animals. "Please walk quietly and carefully everyone," she says. "If we are quiet, we could see a fennec fox, or a dorcas gazelle, or maybe a sand cat." The family continue along the trail. Ramy sees animals' **tracks** in the sand. Dad takes a photo of a fennec fox. Mom sees many beautiful birds. Everyone is enjoying the trail.

كان اليوم جميلاً دافئاً، وليس دافئاً جداً. إنه يوم رائع للمشي. هناك نباتات الصبار وأشجار النخيل. هم يرون الأغنام وبعض الجمال. ملاك سعيدة جداً لأنها تحب الحيوانات. "يرجى المشي بهدوء وحذر، الجميع"، هي تقول. "إذا كنا هادئين، يمكننا أن نرى فennec fox، أو gazelle dorcas، أو ربما sand cat." العائلة تستمر في المشي على المسار. رامى يرون **أثر** الحيوانات في الرمال. أبيهم يأخذ صورة من فennec fox. أمهم ترون الكثير من الطيور الجميلة. الجميع يستمتع بالمسار.



Then Mom says, "Hey everyone, I have something in my shoe. Can we stop for a minute?" She sits down. The others drink some water and wait. Ramy looks down at the rocks near the path. He sees some strange shapes inside them. "Look!" he says. "What are these things in the rocks, Dad?" "I don't know," says Dad. "They look like bones...." "We are very near the place they found the dinosaur skeleton," says Mom. "Maybe they are dinosaur bones!" Ramy is very excited. "Let's ask Uncle Youssef!" he says. "Dad, can we call him?" "Yes, of course," says Dad. Uncle Youssef is very interested in the rocks Ramy found. He tells Dad to take some photographs of them and meet him at Grandma's house for dinner.

ثم أمهم تقول، "هيا يا جميع، لدي شيء في حذائي. هل يمكننا التوقف لمبرهة؟" هي تجلس على الأرض. الآخرون يشربون المياه و ينتظرون. رامى ينظر إلى الصخور على المسار. هي ترون أشكال غريبة داخلها. "انظروا!" هي تقول. "ما هي هذه الأشياء في الصخور، أبي؟" "أنا لست أعرف"، يقول أبيهم. "هم يشبهون عظام...." "نحن قريبون جداً من المكان الذي تم العثور على الهيكل العظمى للديناصور"، تقول أمهم. "ربما هم عظام الديناصور!" رامى سعيد جداً. "دعنا نسأل عم يوسف!" هي تقول. "أبي، هل يمكننا أن نطلبه؟" "نعم، بالطبع"، يقول أبيهم. عم يوسف مهتم جداً بالصخور التي وجدها رامى. هي تقول لأبيهم أن يأخذ بعض الصور و يلتقيهم في منزل جدهم لـ العشاء.



Later that evening Dad shows Uncle Youssef the photos and Ramy shows him the place on the map. Uncle Youssef asks the family to go back there with him the next day.

Activities

1 Read and write (T) true or (F) false.

اقرأ واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

- ☐ The family goes on the nature trail.
- ☐ Mom doesn't like watching amazing birds.
- ☐ There aren't any animals to see.
- ☐ Ramy found some bones.

2 Complete the following sentences.

أكمل الجمل الآتية.

- ☐ Mom has some to look at the birds.
- ☐ Malak is very pleased because she loves
- ☐ Everyone is enjoying the
- ☐ Ramy found at the rocks near the path.

3 Answer the following questions.

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية.

- ☐ What did the family pack for the nature trail?
- ☐ What did mom like?
- ☐ How was the weather that day?
- ☐ What did uncle Youssef ask the family to do?

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



The next day they go back along the trail. They find Ramy's rocks and Uncle Youssef looks at them carefully.

"They are not dinosaur bones in the rocks," says Uncle Youssef. "But they are certainly very old. They are probably from a type of ancient ibex that doesn't exist now." Ramy is disappointed because the bones are not from a dinosaur. But Uncle Youssef says, "Well done Ramy for finding them! It is important to take time to look at the world around us and watch things - just like an archaeologist! Now, would you all like to come to the dig and see my dinosaur skeleton?"

"Yes please, Uncle Youssef!" say Ramy and Malak.

في اليوم التالي يذهبون مع دكتور يوسف إلى مكان حفرة الديناصورات. دكتور يوسف يلاحظ الصخور بعناية. "إنها ليست عظام ديناصورات في الصخور"، يقول دكتور يوسف. "لكنها بالتأكيد قديمة جداً. فإنها ربما نوع من أنواع الوعل القديم الذي لم يعد موجود الآن." رامي محبط لأن العظام لم تكن عظام ديناصور. ولكن يقول العم يوسف، "أحسنت يا رامي لمتورك عليها! فمن المهم أن نأخذ الوقت لننظر إلى العالم من حولنا ونشاهد الأشياء - فقط كعالم آثار! والآن، هل تودون أن تأتوا إلى الحفرة الأثرى وتروا هيكل الديناصور الخاص بي؟" يقول رامي وملاك: "نعم من فضلك يا عم يوسف".



"Here he is," says Uncle Youssef. "What do you think?"

"Wow!" says Ramy. "It's amazing to think it lived millions of years ago."

"And that its bones were under the ground for such a long time," says Malak.

"In fact, we found the skeleton because of climate change," says Uncle Youssef.

"Now there is less rain and fewer plants. This means the ground is dry and the wind can blow away the sand. Things that were under the ground come to the surface. That's good for archaeologists but bad for the planet."

يقول العم يوسف: "ها هو". "ما رأيكم؟" يقول رامي: "واو!" "إنه شيء مذهل أن تفكر كيف عاش هذا منذ ملايين السنين." ويقول ملك: "وعظامه هذه كانت تحت الأرض لهذه الفترة الطويلة." يقول العم يوسف. "في الحقيقة، عثرنا على هذا الهيكل العظمي بسبب تغير المناخ. وأصبح الآن هناك كمية قليلة من الأمطار ونباتات أقل. هذا يعني أن الأرض جافة والرياح كانت تهب بعيدة الرمال. هناك أشياء كانت تحت الأرض وتحركت إلى السطح. هذا الأشياء جيدة لعلماء الآثار ولكنها سيئة للكوكب."

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



Later everyone is getting ready to go home.

"Thanks for showing us the dinosaur, Uncle Youssef," says Ramy. "It was so interesting. I would love to be an archaeologist. It's such a cool job!"

"It's fascinating work, but it's hard," says Uncle Youssef, "Sometimes we look for years and don't find anything."

"We can help if you're looking for other dinosaurs!" says Malak.

"Thanks for all the delicious food," says Mom. "It was lovely to see you both again."

"Thank you dear. Come back and see us soon," says Grandma.

في اليوم الذي كان الجميع مستعدين للعودة إلى المنزل، يقول رامي: "شكرا لك يا عم يوسف أن أرينا الديناصور. كان شيقا."

أما كورن، فتقول: "لقد كان رائعاً جداً."

يقول عم يوسف: "لكنه شاق، فأحياناً نقوم بالبحث لسنوات ولا نعثري على أي شيء."

تقول كورن: "سأكون معكم أبحث عن ديناصورات أخرى!"

تقول أمي للجد والجددة: "شكراً على كل هذا الطعام اللذيذ. كان شيقاً جداً أن نرى كل هذا."

تقول الجددة: "شكراً على كل هذا. نأمل أن نراكم قريباً."



"So, did you enjoy our trip?" asks Mom in the car.

"Yes, I thought it was fantastic," says Ramy. "Me too!" says Malak.

"What do you think you learned from it?" asks Dad.

Ramy says, "I learned it's important to look around us carefully and notice things in our environment."

"Yes, that is how you can discover interesting things," adds Malak.

"You're right, kids" says Dad. "Well done!"

يقول الأب: "هل استمتعتم برحلتنا؟" يسألهم أمي في السيارة.
يقول رامي: "نعم، لقد كان رائعاً جداً."
تقول كورن: "نعم، لقد كان رائعاً جداً."
يسأل الأب: "ماذا تعلمتم من الرحلة؟"
يقول رامي: "تعلمت أنه من المهم أن ننظر حولنا بعناية ونلاحظ الأشياء في بيئتنا."
تقول كورن: "نعم، هذا هو الطريقة التي يمكنك بها اكتشاف أشياء مثيرة للاهتمام."



Activities

1 Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

اقرأ واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

- ☐ The bones, that Ramy found, are from a dinosaur.
- ☐ It is important to look at the world around us and watch things.
- ☐ They found the skeleton because of climate change.
- ☐ The children didn't enjoy their trip.

2 Complete the following sentences.

أكمل الجمل الآتية.

- ☐ Uncle Youssef looks at carefully.
- ☐ The bones are from a type of ancient
- ☐ They found the skeleton of dinosaur because of
- ☐ Ramy wants to be an

3 Answer the following questions.

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية.

- ☐ Why is Ramy disappointed?
- ☐ What is the moral of the story?
- ☐ What does Ramy want to be?
- ☐ How do children feel?



General Activities

1 Read and write (T) True or (F) false.

اقرأ واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

- ☐ Mom sees the story about the dinosaur skeleton in the newspaper.
- ☐ The dinosaur skeleton is near their house.
- ☐ Uncle Youssef is a farmer.
- ☐ Mom loves looking at birds.
- ☐ Ramy finds dinosaur bones.
- ☐ They go to uncle Youssef's office.

2 Read and match.

اقرأ وصل.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Dad reads a story | <input type="checkbox"/> live near the archaeological dig. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> The children's grandparents | <input type="checkbox"/> the family to the dig. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Ramy finds old bones | <input type="checkbox"/> about a dinosaur in the newspaper. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Uncle Youssef invites | <input type="checkbox"/> an archaeologist in the future. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Ramy wants to be | <input type="checkbox"/> in some rocks near the trail. |

1- () 2- () 3- () 4- () 5- ()

3 Discuss the questions.

ناقش هذه الأسئلة.

- ☐ Why is it important to look carefully at the world around you?
- ☐ What information can archaeology (علم الآثار) give us?
- ☐ Why is archaeology an important activity in Egypt?
- ☐ Why are dinosaur skeletons interesting? What can they tell us?



Listening Texts

Unit (7)

Lesson (1)

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False .

Hi! Dina, welcome to my new apartment. My parents had to move to a new job, so we moved to a closer apartment. The new kitchen is bigger. There's more space in the living room so we have a bigger television. We have three bedrooms now. I share a room with my sister.

2- Listen and complete.

Fareeda: Hi Dina, welcome to my new apartment! Come in!

Dina: Thanks! Do you like living here?

Fareeda: I love it! It's a great apartment! I like this part of town and it's much bigger than our old apartment.

Dina: How long did you live in your old apartment?

Fareeda: Twelve years, since I was born. Then my parents had to move to a new job, so we moved to a closer apartment.

Lesson (2)

Listen and write (T) True or (F) False .

I love my bedroom. I share it with my sister. On the right, there is my bed with a desk next to it. On the left, there is my sister's bed. In the middle of the room, there is an armchair with two cushions and a big closet. On the wall, there are

lots of posters of animals.

Lesson (3)

Listen and write (T) True or (F) False .

In cities, people lived very close together, and so they built their houses taller, with two floors. This saved space so they could build more houses. City houses joined together, just like today. In the countryside, houses usually only had one floor, and they also had a garden. They grew vegetables and kept chickens there.

2- Listen and complete.

In Ancient Egypt, many people made their homes near the Nile. They used water for drinking, cooking, and washing. They also used mud from the river to make bricks for their houses. The mud bricks made very strong walls.

Activities On Unit (7)

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False .

My uncle is a scientist and loves animals. When he was younger, he traveled a lot in South America for work. He loved it there because the people were very friendly and helped him with his work.

2- Listen and complete.

Hi, My name's Dalida and I like blogging about different things. This week I'm writing about unusual homes. This topic is very interesting for me because my mom's an architect.

Listening Texts

Unit (8)

Lesson (1)

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False .

Only five people came to the club today! They have problems. My friend Tarek hurt his ankle. Amr had an earache. Lama went to the dentist because she had a toothache. The coach told us to be careful when we have a cough or a sore throat.

2- Listen and complete.

Mom: What's the matter, Dina?

Dina: My tooth hurts.

Mom: Do you eat a lot of sweets?

Dina: Yes, I do.

Mom: You should go to the dentist?

Dina: You are right, mom.

Lesson (2)

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False .

One day, a local farmer was walking along the road with an elephant that worked on his farm. The farmer asked if the men would like to touch the elephant to discover how it looks. The men were very excited and walked over to the enormous animal.

2- Listen and complete.

The farmer listened to everything the men said. He turned to them and said, "In fact, you're all correct! Each of you only touched one part of the elephant. If you stop for a moment, and listen to what you all think, you can all see what the elephant looks like."

Lesson (3)

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False .

There is very busy hospital in India. That treats patients from all over the country. Sick people usually go to hospital with many relatives so this means the hospital is always very crowded. To solve the problem, the staff began to teach people how to help their patients at home. So, a few number go to hospital now.

2- Listen and complete.

Nurse: Come in, Nahla what's the matter?

Nahla: I fell over in the playground.

Nurse: Oh, dear. Where does it hurt?

Nahla: Here. I have a cut on my arm.

Nurse: Oh, yes. I see. Don't worry. I'll clean it and put a band-age on it.

Dina: Thank you, nurse.

Lesson (4)

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False .

In some countries, honey has been used by doctors for thousands of years. It was first used to treat wounds by Egyptian doctors around 5,000 years ago. Recently, scientists have tried to find out exactly why honey is so good for healing wounds and treating illnesses.

2- Listen and complete.

Omar: What's your favourite food?

Kamel: My favourite food is rice with fish.

Omar: Do you like sweets?

Kamel: Yes, I like sweet basbousa.

Omar: Do you like juice?

Kamel: Yes, I like mango juice.

Lessons (5 & 6)

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

To stay healthy, it's very important to drink plenty of water. This keeps your body working well. It's especially important if it's a very hot day or if you're exercising. You should have healthy food, too. It's important to do sport. Sports make us healthy and fit.

Activities On Unit (8)

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

Scientists say that some types of honey can kill bacteria. This helps wounds to heal more quickly. The honey that doctors use is a special honey. You can mix some honey with milk to make your cough better.

2- Listen and complete.

Omar: What's the matter?

Amr: I have a toothache.

Omar: Do you eat lots of sweets?

Amr: Yes, I do.

Omar: You should go to the dentist.

Amr: OK. You are right.

Unit (9)

Lesson (1)

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

Last week Omar went to wildlife park with his friends. He enjoyed it very much. They saw lots of different animals like lions, kangaroos, and penguins. He saw his favorite birds, the parrots. He was a bit sad because he didn't see the bats and he's doing a project on them at school.

2- Listen and complete.

Ali: Where did you go?

Omar: I went to the wildlife park. It was awesome!

Ali: What did you see?

Omar: I saw animals like lions and kangaroos.

Ali: What birds did you see?

Omar: I saw parrots and penguins.

Lesson (2)

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

Once there was a very big old tree in a hot, dry land. It had lived for many years. Its trunk was very wide and it had many green branches. It was famous because it was the only tree where it lived, and it gave shelter and rest to hundreds of travelers as they moved across the country. It was near four towns and many villages in its area and was a meeting point for traders.

Lesson (3 A)

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

Rain falls from clouds in the sky. Some rainwater goes straight into the ground. But a lot of it goes into streams, rivers, lakes, and then the ocean. This process is called precipitation.

2- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

Some of the rainwater changes - the sun warms it and it becomes water vapor. This process is called evaporation. We cannot see or smell the water vapor and it doesn't stay on the ground. It rises in the air and, as it gets cooler high up in the sky, it changes back into water and forms clouds. As the clouds become bigger, the water in them gets heavier.

Lesson (3 B)

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

Lots of different people played important roles in Ancient Egyptian society. The person in charge was the pharaoh. The pharaoh needed lots of people to help him. He worked closely with nobles, and they looked after different things. The nobles collected taxes and organized soldiers.

2- Listen and complete.

Soldiers were busy keeping Egypt safe. As Egypt was such an important and very rich country, the soldiers guarded the kingdom. The army was strong, and the soldiers were good at their jobs.

Lesson (4)

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

A famous Egyptian footballer in England is Mohamed El Neny. He plays for Arsenal. He is Egyptian.

Lesson (5 & 6)

Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

Dear Tamer

This week we're talking a lot about unusual animals at school. We looked at animals from around the world and some from Egypt. My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the dugong - can you see the photo? I think it's got a lovely friendly face and it's very cute! Its nickname is the sea cow and it spends many hours eating grass from the sea bed every day.

Amir

Activities On Unit (9)

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

Scribes were very important because

they were usually the only people who could read and write. They trained for about 12 years before they wrote on papyrus. They wrote many different things like letters, records, and important papers. Without the scribes, we would know almost nothing about Ancient Egypt today.

2- Listen and complete.

1- Dolphins are friendly. They swim in a group with their families in the ocean.

2- Pandas live in China. They eat bamboo. They are big, and black and white.

Activities on Unit (7-9)

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

The Egyptian tortoise is one of the smallest tortoises in the world. It lives in the desert areas of Egypt and Libya. However, the Egyptian tortoise is now endangered. This is because its habitat has been destroyed, but also because people take them from the wild to keep as pets.

2- Listen and complete.

Dorcas gazelles live in the Sahara and Nagev deserts. They are herbivores - This means they only eat leaves and plants. Dorcas gazelles are nearly extinct for two main reasons: Firstly, people hunt them for their meat and skin. Secondly, more and more people are using their habitat for farming and building.

Unit (10)

Lesson (1)

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

Alexandria is really exciting place to visit. There's a lot to see and do there! It's a big city with lots of amazing

restaurants, stores, markets and museums. There's even a beach!

2- Listen and complete:

Safia : Hi Anas! Do you have interesting places in your town?

Anas : Hello Safia! Yes we have a shopping mall.

Safia : Is it big or small?

Anas : It's very big.

Safia : What do you buy from there?

Anas : I buy my clothes.

Lesson (2)

1-Listen and write (T) True or (F) False .

There is lots of evidence that tells us about life in Ancient Egypt. Evidence is facts or signs that show clearly that something exists or is true. We can learn about buildings from ancient monuments. These are structures that were built to celebrate important people.

2- Listen and complete:

Pharaohs and other important people were buried in beautiful tombs. These also had other things people thought they might need and information about their life.

Lesson (3)

Teacher : OK, children. We're here now. This is the Alexandria Library.

Reem : Wow! It's amazing. Can we go inside?

Teacher : Wait a moment. Is everybody here? Yes, Ok. Let's go in.

Ali : I'm going first!

Teacher : Don't run, Ali. Walk quietly. This is a very important place.

Ali : I'm sorry.

Lesson (4)

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False .

One day, a villager wanted to sell his

beans in the market, but he couldn't walk far. His camel, Gabi, said, "Give me the sacks of beans - I will take them to the market for you."

2- Listen and complete:

The camel took the sacks of beans to the market. It walked along the road. It didn't recognize the road. The camel lost its way and refused to ask for help. He was foolish and sorry.

Lesson (5 & 6)

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False .

In our perfect town, there is a big zoo right next to the school. We can go there every afternoon after classes. We can help to feed the animals. It is really hot in our town, so there is a water park that is always open. It's free to go in!

2- Listen and complete:

There is a wonderful market that sells all kinds of delicious food, like fresh bread and fresh fruit and vegetables. There is a big park with lots of trees so we can go for family picnics in the shade. This is our perfect town!

Activities On Unit (10)

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False .

We know much about life in Ancient Egypt. There's lots of evidence that tells us about it. We can learn about buildings from ancient monuments. Artifacts like vases and water carriers tell us how people lived. Paintings show scenes of daily life.

2- Listen and complete:

Anas : Where did you go on holiday?

Seif : I went to London. It has lots of tourist attractions.

Anas : What did you visit?

Seif : I visited the British Museum and

Buckingham Palace.

Anas : What else did you do?

Seif : I took a boat trip on the River Thames.

Unit (11)

Lesson (2)

Listen and write (T) True or (F) False .

My family and I want to go on a trail to Wadi Degla or the Blue Lagoon at Dahab. Mom said I can take a friend, and I want to take you. Mom said you and I can decide which we like best of the two places. Wadi Degla is cool because you can see lots of animals, but you can swim at the Blue Lagoon.

Lesson (3)

- Listen and complete.

Sherif is going on the Red Sea Mountain Trail. He wants to protect his feet so he's taking some hiking shoes. There are a lot of hills and rocks so he doesn't want to fall over. He's also going to take some snacks from home so he doesn't get hungry.

Lessons (5&6)

Listen and write (T) True or (F) False .

Malak and Sara are free on the weekend. They are going to go on a desert hike. They'll meet at Sara's home. They're going to meet on Friday at 4 pm. They're going to take hiking shoes, water and sweaters.

Activities On Unit (11)

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False .

The nature trail trip sounds like fun. The Blue Lagoon it is fine because we

can swim and dive. I can swim quickly. And my friend Dina is brave. We are going to the Blue Lagoon on July 2021.

2- Listen and complete.

- Hi Ramy, what are you taking on the Red Sea Mountain Trail?

- My friend said it gets very hot on the trail in the places where there are no streams, so I'm taking a hat for my head. I'm also going to take a blanket in case I get cold at night.

Unit (12)

Lesson (1)

Listen and write (T) True or (F) False .

Today mom received an email from her sister Nadia, and her husband Hany. They are on a business trip traveling around the world. Nadia and Hany were in India last week, and this week they are in Singapore. Mom is reading the email a loudly to her daughter Rana and her son Ali.

Lesson (2)

- Listen and complete.

Reem is going on vacation. She is traveling to Canada by plane. Today, she is packing her suitcase. She knows that there is often rain in Canada, so she is taking her umbrella. It can also be cold there, so she is packing a sweater. Reem loves swimming.

Lesson (3)

Listen and write (T) True or (F) False .

No visit to Jordan is complete without a trip to the Dead Sea. There is so much salt in this sea that you are able

to float on the water. You can also enjoy the Dead Sea mud, which is very good for your skin.

Lesson (4)

Listen and write (T) True or (F) False .

Seleem was feeling sad. It was hot summer, school was over and he wanted to go on vacation. His cousin Sherif was away at the beach and Seleem wanted to be there too. His family usually went on vacation with Sherif's family, but this year that wasn't possible. Seleem's dad had a new job and they had to stay in Cairo.

Lessons (5&6)

Listen and write (T) True or (F) False .

In the morning, we go to the beach to go snorkelling. Swim with the turtles and brightly-colored fish.

The afternoon can be spent on the beach with a picnic and a good book.

Today we race through the sand dunes in beach buggies.

Activities On Unit (12)

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False .

Farouk is a farmer in Aswan. Because he lives in Aswan, he knows that the sun will shine most days. He is lucky that he lives on the fertile banks of the Nile so that he can use the water for his crops. Today, Farouk is harvesting the grain, putting it into baskets made from reeds.

2- Listen and complete.

Today we head out of the city for a daytrip to As-Salt. About an hour away from Amman. In the ancient town of As-Salt you will find lots of local Jordanian

culture. The markets are wonderful and there are many traditional arts and crafts to buy. We will visit the Abu Jaber Museum.

Activities on units (10-12)

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False .

Hi Ghada,

We arrived in Alexandria on Monday, and we haven't stopped! There is so much to see here. We visited some museums and the theatre. We had an amazing tour of famous places. It's really fun, but very busy and crowded.

See you soon,
Randa.

2- Listen and complete.

Dear Amr,

Thank you for telling me to pack some good hiking shoes and a sun hat! We have walked for many hours every day. There are amazing things to see, some unusual flowers and trees. One day, I was lucky enough to see a fennec fox and a wild cat. Hope you're all well.

Salah